

# 2007 GMC Sierra Denali Classic Owner Manual

---

<b>Seats and Restraint Systems</b> .....	7	<b>Instrument Panel</b> .....	139
Front Seats .....	8	Instrument Panel Overview .....	142
Rear Seats .....	14	Climate Controls .....	160
Safety Belts .....	16	Warning Lights, Gages, and	
Child Restraints .....	38	Indicators .....	168
Airbag System .....	64	Driver Information Center (DIC) .....	186
Restraint System Check .....	80	Audio System(s) .....	206
<b>Features and Controls</b> .....	83	<b>Driving Your Vehicle</b> .....	251
Keys .....	85	Your Driving, the Road, and	
Doors and Locks .....	90	Your Vehicle .....	252
Windows .....	94	Towing .....	303
Theft-Deterrent Systems .....	96	<b>Service and Appearance Care</b> .....	321
Starting and Operating Your Vehicle .....	99	Service .....	324
Mirrors .....	115	Fuel .....	326
OnStar® System .....	122	Checking Things Under the Hood .....	332
Universal Home Remote System .....	124	All-Wheel Drive .....	372
Storage Areas .....	136	Rear Axle .....	373
Sunroof .....	138		

Front Axle .....	374
Bulb Replacement .....	376
Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement .....	383
Tires .....	384
Appearance Care .....	423
Vehicle Identification .....	434
Electrical System .....	435
Capacities and Specifications .....	444

<b>Maintenance Schedule</b> .....	445
Maintenance Schedule .....	446
<b>Customer Assistance Information</b> .....	467
Customer Assistance and Information ...	468
Reporting Safety Defects .....	486
<b>Index</b> .....	489



GENERAL MOTORS, GM, the GM Emblem, GMC, the GMC Truck Emblem, and the names SIERRA and DENALI are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. We reserve the right to make changes after that time without further notice. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name "General Motors of Canada Limited" for GMC whenever it appears in this manual.

This manual describes features that may be available in this model, but your vehicle may not be equipped with all of them. For example, more than one entertainment system may be offered or your vehicle may have been ordered without a front passenger or rear seats.

Keep this manual in the vehicle, so it will be there if it is needed while you are on the road. If the vehicle is sold, leave this manual in the vehicle.

## Canadian Owners

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer or from:

Helm, Incorporated  
P.O. Box 07130  
Detroit, MI 48207

## How to Use This Manual

Many people read the owner manual from beginning to end when they first receive their new vehicle. If this is done, it can help you learn about the features and controls for the vehicle. Pictures and words work together in the owner manual to explain things.

## Index

A good place to quickly locate information about the vehicle is the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

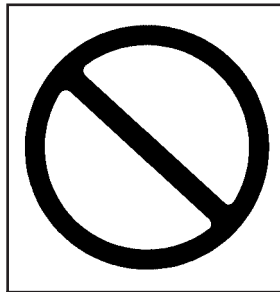
## Safety Warnings and Symbols

There are a number of safety cautions in this book. We use a box and the word CAUTION to tell about things that could hurt you if you were to ignore the warning.

### CAUTION:

**These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.**

In the caution area, we tell you what the hazard is. Then we tell you what to do to help avoid or reduce the hazard. Please read these cautions. If you do not, you or others could be hurt.



You will also find a circle with a slash through it in this book. This safety symbol means “Do Not,” “Do Not do this” or “Do Not let this happen.”

## Vehicle Damage Warnings

Also, in this manual you will find these notices:

**Notice:** These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.

A notice tells about something that can damage the vehicle. Many times, this damage would not be covered by your vehicle's warranty, and it could be costly. But the notice will tell what to do to help avoid the damage.

When you read other manuals, you might see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings in different colors or in different words.

There are also warning labels on the vehicle. They use the same words, CAUTION or NOTICE.


































## Vehicle Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage, or indicator.

If you need help figuring out a specific name of a component, gage, or indicator, reference the following topics:

- Seats and Restraint Systems in Section 1
- Features and Controls in Section 2
- Instrument Panel Overview in Section 3
- Climate Controls in Section 3
- Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators in Section 3
- Audio System(s) in Section 3
- Engine Compartment Overview in Section 5

These are some examples of symbols that may be found on the vehicle:

CAUTION POSSIBLE INJURY		LATCH BOTH LAP AND SHOULDER BELTS TO PROTECT OCCUPANT DO NOT TWIST SAFETY BELT WHEN ATTACHING	 	MASTER LIGHTING SWITCH		ENGINE COOLANT TEMP		TIRE PRESSURE			
PROTECT EYES BY SHIELDING		FASTEN SEAT BELTS		AIRBAG		TURN SIGNALS		BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM		FUSE BOX ACCESS	
CAUSTIC BATTERY ACID COULD CAUSE BURNS		MOVE SEAT FULLY REARWARD SECURE CHILD SEAT		DO NOT INSTALL A REAR-FACING CHILD RESTRAINT IN THIS SEATING POSITION		PARKING LAMPS		BRAKE		ENGINE COOLANT FAN	
AVOID SPARKS OR FLAMES		PULL BELT OUT COMPLETELY THEN SECURE CHILD SEAT		DO NOT INSTALL A FORWARD-FACING CHILD RESTRAINT IN THIS SEATING POSITION		HAZARD WARNING FLASHER		COOLANT		FUEL	
SPARK OR FLAME COULD EXPLODE BATTERY		POWER WINDOW		DOOR LOCK UNLOCK		DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS		ENGINE OIL PRESSURE		OWNER MANUAL	
						FOG LAMPS		ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM		SERVICE MANUAL	

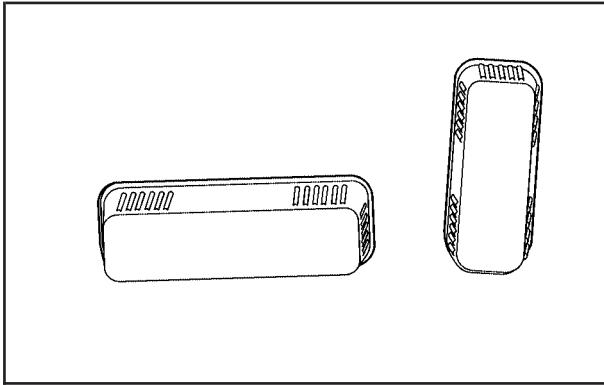
# Section 1 Seats and Restraint Systems

---

<b>Front Seats</b> .....	8	Child Restraint Systems .....	45
Power Seats .....	8	Where to Put the Restraint .....	50
Power Lumbar .....	9	Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) .....	51
Heated Seats .....	9	Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position .....	58
Memory Seat and Mirrors .....	10	Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position .....	60
Power Reclining Seatbacks .....	12	<b>Airbag System</b> .....	64
Head Restraints .....	14	Where Are the Airbags? .....	67
<b>Rear Seats</b> .....	14	When Should an Airbag Inflate? .....	69
Rear Seat Operation .....	14	What Makes an Airbag Inflate? .....	70
<b>Safety Belts</b> .....	16	How Does an Airbag Restrain? .....	71
Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone .....	16	What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? .....	71
Questions and Answers About Safety Belts .....	21	Passenger Sensing System .....	73
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly .....	22	Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	78
Driver Position .....	22	Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	79
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy .....	31	<b>Restraint System Check</b> .....	80
Right Front Passenger Position .....	32	Checking the Restraint Systems .....	80
Rear Seat Passengers .....	32	Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash .....	81
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides .....	35		
Safety Belt Extender .....	37		
<b>Child Restraints</b> .....	38		
Older Children .....	38		
Infants and Young Children .....	41		

## Front Seats

### Power Seats



The power seat controls are located on the outboard side of the seats.

To adjust the seat, do any of the following:

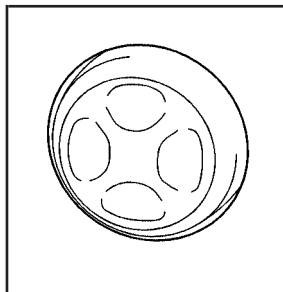
- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the horizontal control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the horizontal control up or down.
- Raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion by moving the rear of the horizontal control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire horizontal control up or down.
- Use the vertical control to recline the seatback. See *Power Reclining Seatbacks on page 12*.

Your seats may have a memory function which allows seat settings to be saved and recalled. See *Memory Seat and Mirrors on page 10* for more information.



## Power Lumbar

Your vehicle's seats may be equipped with power lumbar.



You can increase or decrease lumbar support in an area of the lower seatback with this control, located on the outboard sides of the front seat(s).

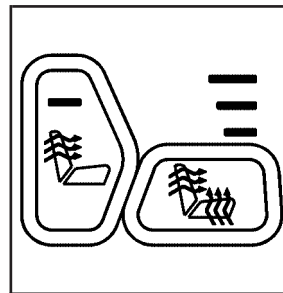
To increase support, press and hold the front of the control. To decrease support, press and hold the rear of the control. Let go of the control when the lower seatback reaches the desired level of support.

You can also reshape the side wing area of the lower seatback for more lateral support.

To increase support, press and hold the top of the control. To decrease support, press and hold the bottom of the control. Let go of the control when the lower seatback reaches the desired level of support.

Your vehicle may have a memory function which allows seat settings to be saved and recalled. See *Memory Seat and Mirrors on page 10* for more information.

## Heated Seats



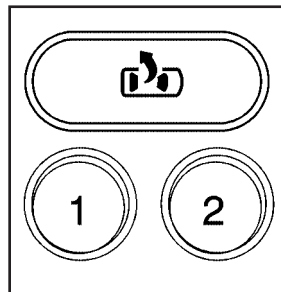
If your vehicle has this feature, the buttons are located on the front doors. The engine must be running for the heated seats to work.

To heat the entire seat, press the horizontal button with the heated seat and seatback symbol. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium and low and to turn the heated seat off. Indicator lights will come on to designate the level of heat selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

To heat only the seatback, press the vertical button with the heated seatback symbol. An indicator light on the seatback button will come on to designate that only the seatback is being heated. Additional presses of the seatback button will cycle through the heat levels for the seatback only. Press the horizontal button again to heat the whole seat.

The heated seats will be canceled after the ignition is turned off. If you still want to use the heated seat feature after you restart your vehicle, you will need to press the heated seat button again.

## Memory Seat and Mirrors



If your vehicle has this feature, the controls for the memory function are located on the driver's door.

These buttons are used to program and recall memory settings for the driver's seat and both the driver's and passenger's outside mirrors. The settings for these features can be saved for up to two drivers.

To store the memory settings, do the following:

1. While the vehicle is in PARK (P), adjust the driver's seat, including the seatback recliner, lumbar, and side wing area, and both outside mirrors to your preference.
2. Press and hold the 1 or 2 button of the memory control for three seconds. A double chime will sound to let you know that the position has been stored.


To repeat the procedure for a second driver, follow the preceding steps, but press the other numbered memory control button.

Each time button 1 or 2 is pressed and released while the vehicle is in PARK (P), a single chime will sound and the memory position will be recalled.

To stop recall movement of the memory seat feature at any time, press one of the memory buttons or power seat controls.

## Easy Exit Seat

The controls for this memory function are located on the driver's door.

 **(Easy Exit Seat):** This button is used to program and recall the desired driver's seat position when exiting or entering the vehicle. The seat position can be saved for up to two drivers.

To store the seat exit position, do the following:

1. Press and release the 1 or 2 button. The seat will move to the stored memory position.
2. Adjust the seat to the desired exit position.
3. Press and hold the exit button of the memory control for three seconds. A double chime will sound to let you know that the position has been stored for the selected button 1 or 2.

To repeat the procedure for a second driver, follow the preceding steps, but press the other numbered memory control button.

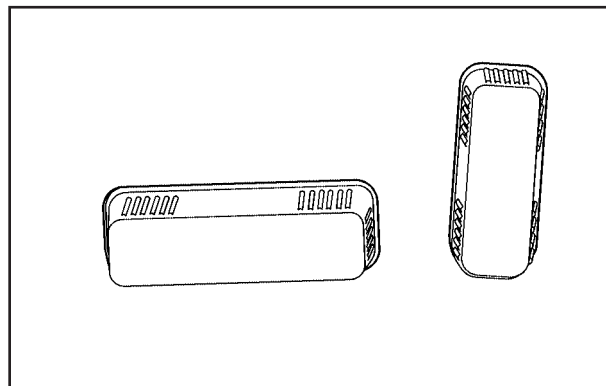
To use the seat exit position, do one of the following:

- Press the exit button on the memory control, or
- If this feature is activated in the DIC, removing the key from the ignition will move the seat to the exit position.

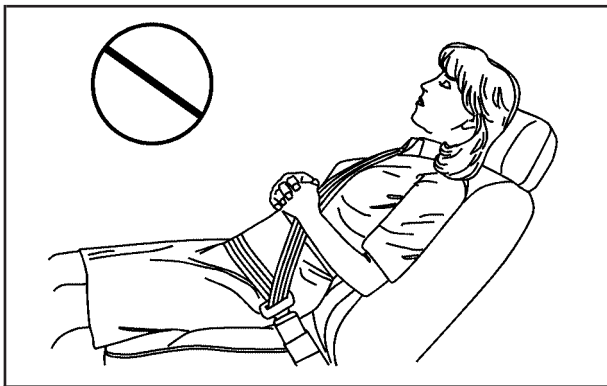
See “Easy Exit Seat” under *DIC Vehicle Customization* on page 199 for more information on activating this feature in the DIC.

## Power Reclining Seatbacks

The front seats have power reclining seatbacks. Use the vertical power seat control located on the outboard side of the seats to operate them.



- To recline the seatback, press the control toward the rear of the vehicle.
- To raise the seatback, press the control toward the front of the vehicle.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts cannot do their job when you are reclined like this.

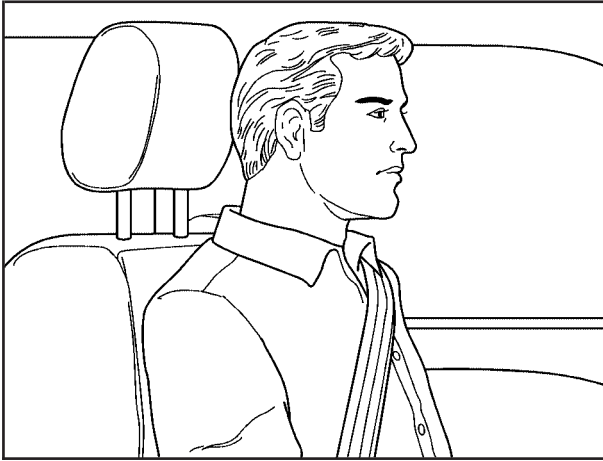
The shoulder belt cannot do its job. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.

Do not have a seatback reclined if your vehicle is moving.

## Head Restraints



Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Push the head restraint down to lower it.

Each front head restraint can also be tilted forward to four positions by pulling on it. A click will sound after each tilt position is reached. Pull the head restraint forward, past the last position, to release it to the upright position.

The rear seat head restraints are also adjustable up and down, but they do not tilt.

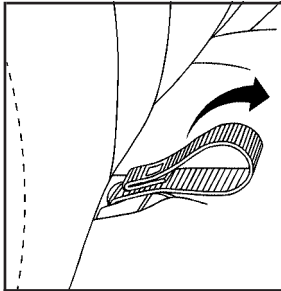
## Rear Seats

### Rear Seat Operation

The second row seat is a 60/40 split seat. Either side of the rear seat may be flipped and folded for added cargo space.

Make sure that nothing is under or in front of the seat and that the head restraints are completely lowered.

To flip and fold the seat, do the following:



1. Pull up on the strap loop at the rear of the seat cushion. Then, pull the seat cushion up and flip it forward.

2. After folding the seat cushion fully forward, pull the seatback forward until it is flat. If the seatback cannot fold flat because it interferes with the cushion, try moving the front seat forward and/or bringing the front seat more upright. The lever at the base of the seat must be turned rearward to release the seatback.

To return the seat to the normal seating position, do the following:

1. Lift the seatback up and push it rearward all the way.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked into place.

3. Lower the seat cushion until it latches into position. Pull up on the seat cushion to make sure it is locked into place.

 **CAUTION:**

**A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.**

Make sure the buckles on the driver's side seatback are accessible to the outboard and center occupant and are not under the seat cushions.

## Safety Belts

### Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This part of the manual tells you how to use safety belts properly. It also tells you some things you should not do with safety belts.

 **CAUTION:**

**Do not let anyone ride where he or she cannot wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you are not wearing a safety belt, your injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle or be ejected from it. You can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly too.**



 **CAUTION:**

**It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.**



Your vehicle has a light that comes on as a reminder to buckle up. See *Safety Belt Reminder Light* on page 171.

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law says to wear safety belts. Here is why: *They work.*

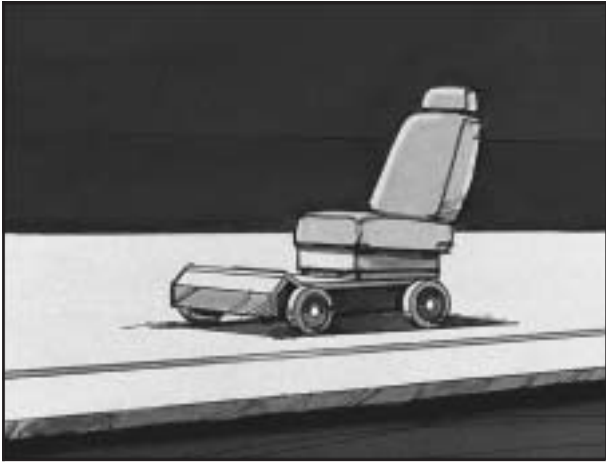
You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a bad one.

A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

After more than 40 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter... a lot!

## Why Safety Belts Work

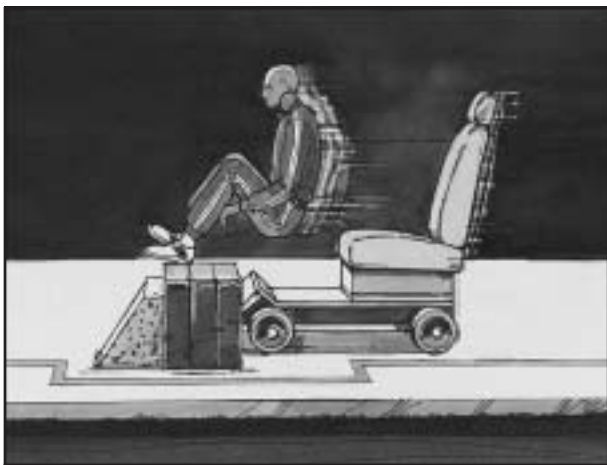
When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.



Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.



Put someone on it.



Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle.  
The rider does not stop.



The person keeps going until stopped by  
something. In a real vehicle, it could be the  
windshield...



or the instrument panel...



or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

## Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

**Q:** Will I be trapped in the vehicle after an accident if I am wearing a safety belt?

**A:** You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down. And your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

**Q:** If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

**A:** Airbags are in many vehicles today and will be in most of them in the future. But they are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Every airbag system ever offered for sale has required the use of safety belts. Even if you are in a vehicle that has airbags, you still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

**Q:** If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

**A:** You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in an accident — even one that is not your fault — you and your passengers can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

## How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This part is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and babies. If a child will be riding in your vehicle, see *Older Children on page 38* or *Infants and Young Children on page 41*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

First, you will want to know which restraint systems your vehicle has.

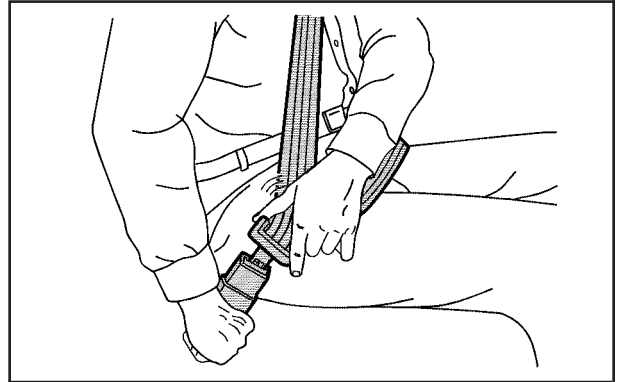
We will start with the driver position.

## Driver Position

### Lap-Shoulder Belt

The driver has a lap-shoulder belt. Here is how to wear it properly.

1. Close and lock the door.
2. Adjust the seat so you can sit up straight. To see how, see "Seats" in the Index.



3. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

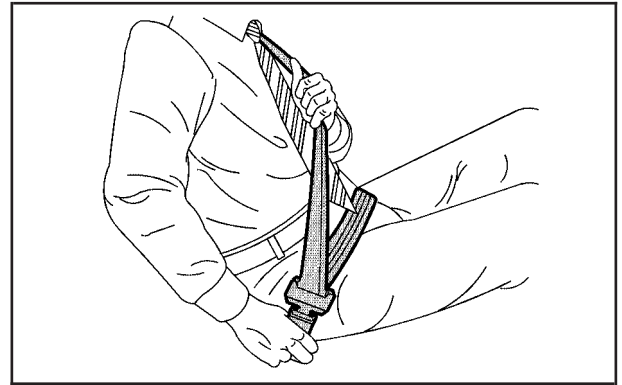
The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it.

Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

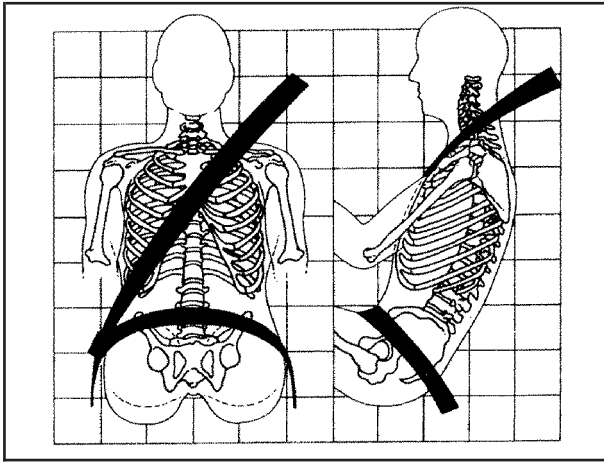
Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 37*.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.

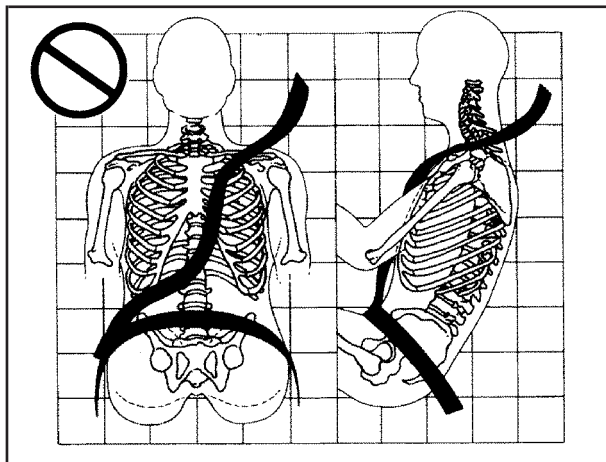


The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.



**Q:** What is wrong with this?

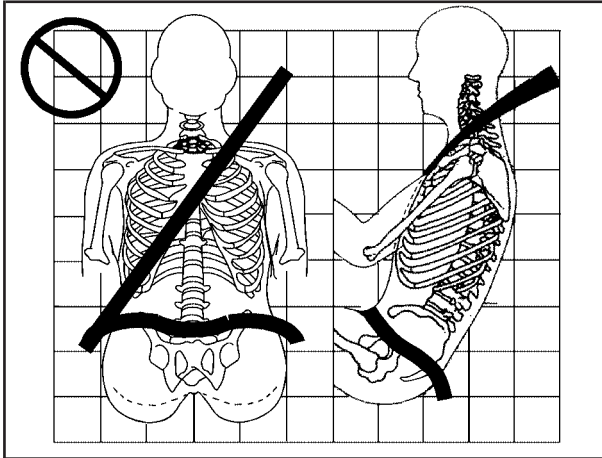


**A:** The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

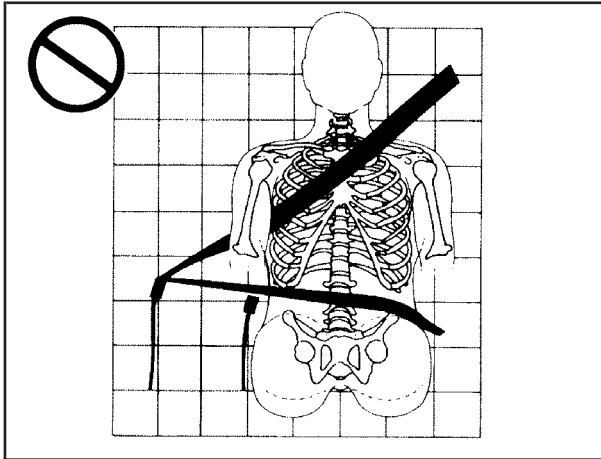


**A:** The lap belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously hurt if your lap belt is too loose. In a crash, you could slide under the lap belt and apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The lap belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

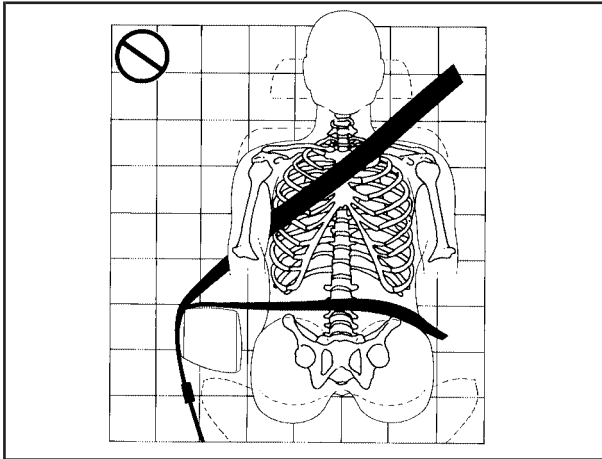


**A:** The belt is buckled in the wrong place.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

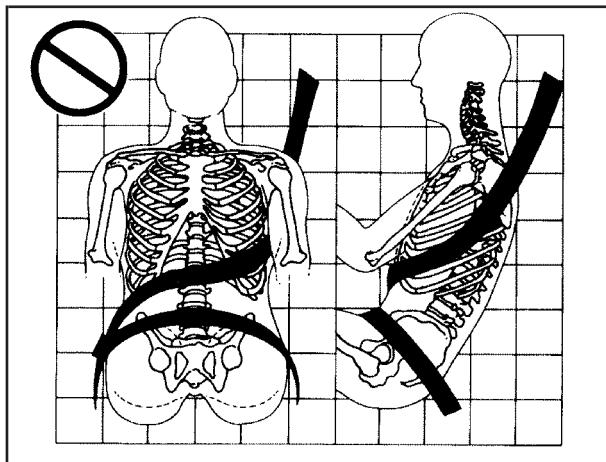


**A:** The belt is over an armrest.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured if your belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied at the abdomen, not at the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries. Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

**Q:** What is wrong with this?

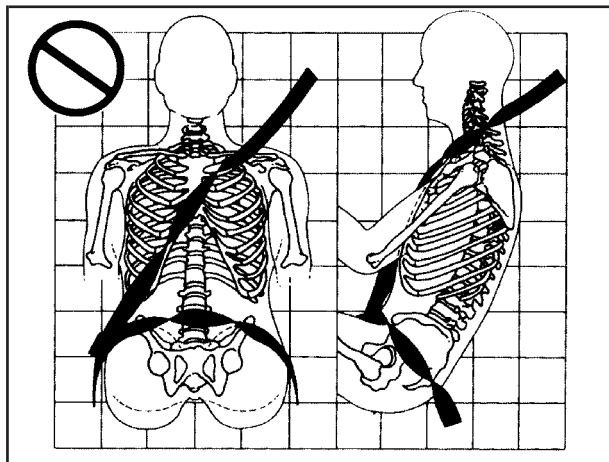


**A:** The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen.

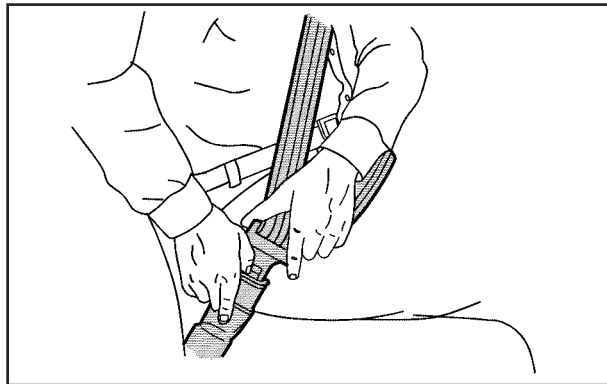
**Q:** What is wrong with this?



**A:** The belt is twisted across the body.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer to fix it.

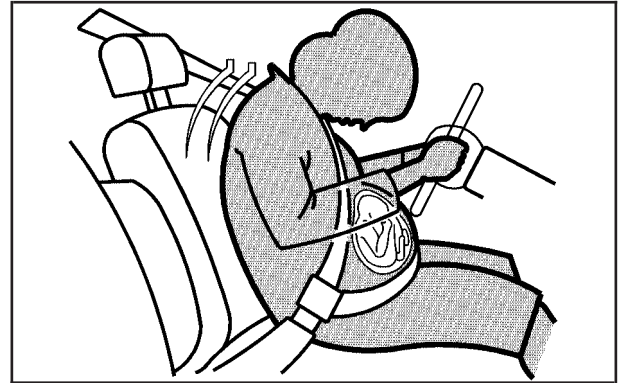


To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should go back out of the way.

Before you close the door, be sure the belt is out of the way. If you slam the door on it, you can damage both the belt and your vehicle.

## Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

## Right Front Passenger Position

To learn how to wear the right front passenger's safety belt properly, see *Driver Position on page 22*.

The right front passenger's safety belt works the same way as the driver's safety belt — except for one thing. If you ever pull the shoulder portion of the belt out all the way, you will engage the child restraint locking feature which may turn off the passenger's frontal airbag. If this happens, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

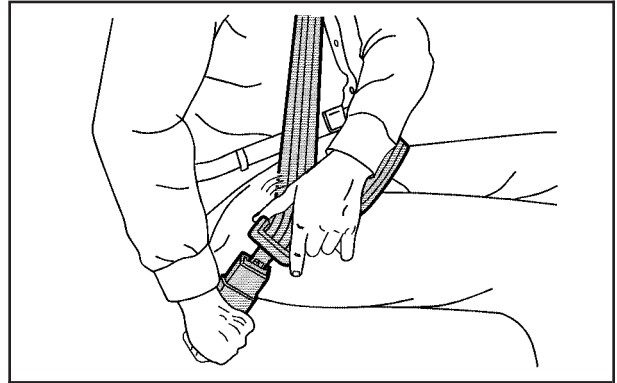
## Rear Seat Passengers

It is very important for rear seat passengers to buckle up! Accident statistics show that unbelted people in the rear seat are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Rear passengers who are not safety belted can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

## Lap-Shoulder Belt

All rear seat positions have lap-shoulder belts. Here is how to wear one properly.



1. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

The shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.



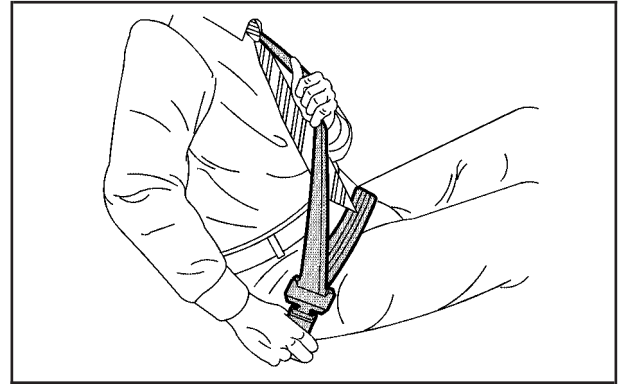
2. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

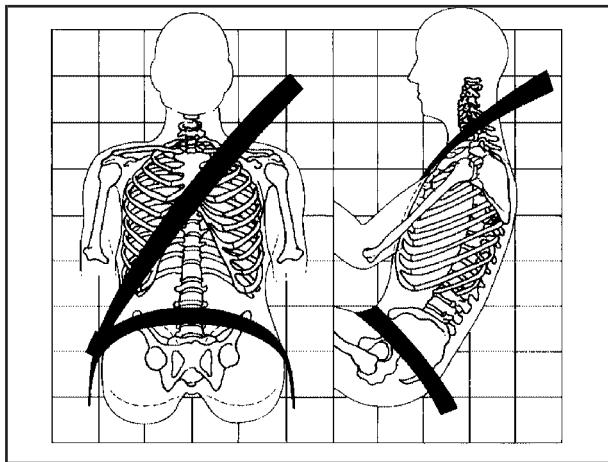
When the shoulder belt is pulled out all the way, it will lock. If it does, let it go back all the way and start again.

If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 37*.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



3. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder part.



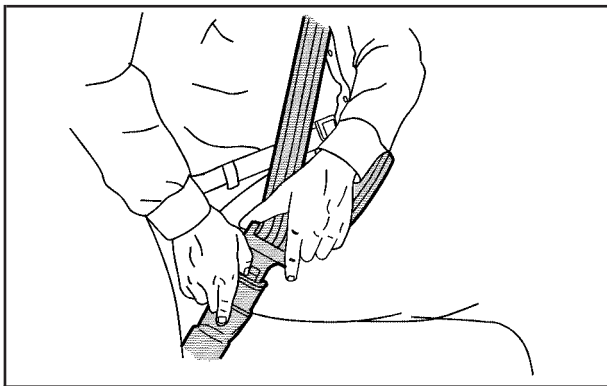
The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there is a sudden stop or a crash, or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.**



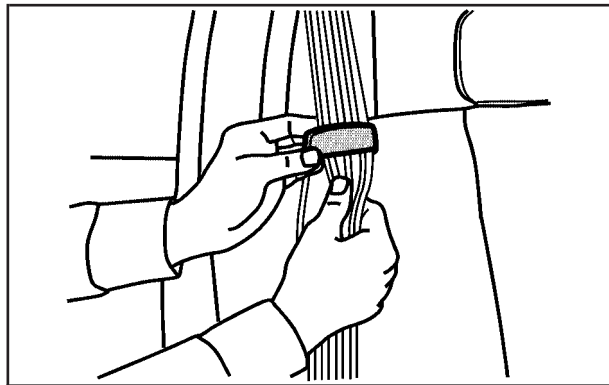
To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle.

## Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

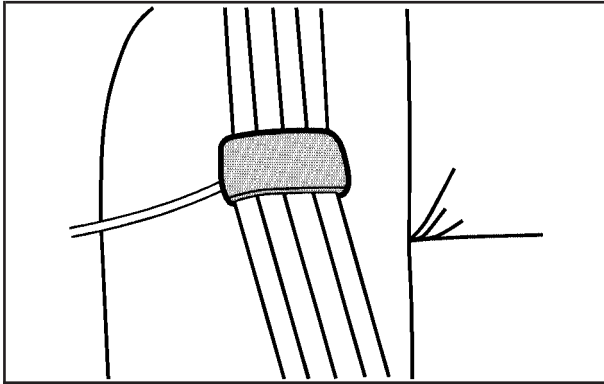
Rear shoulder belt comfort guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

There is one guide for each outboard passenger position in the rear seat. Here is how to install a comfort guide to the shoulder belt:

1. Remove the guide from its storage clip on the interior body.



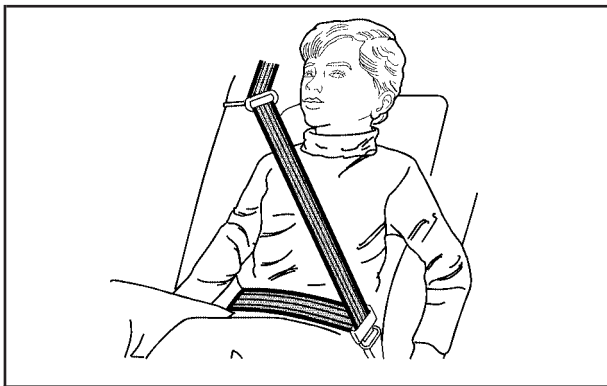
2. Place the guide over the belt and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.**

3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.



4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described in *Rear Seat Passengers on page 32*. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that you can take them out of the guides. Slide the guide onto the storage clip.

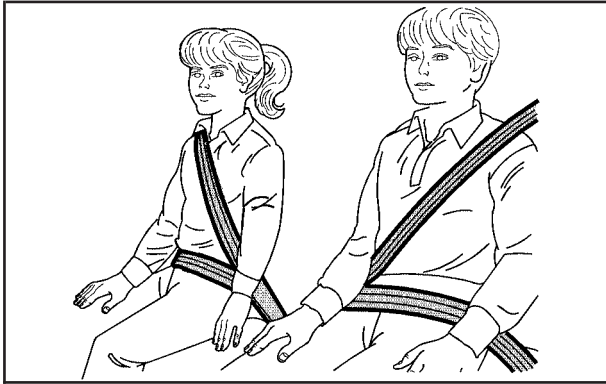
## Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, just attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

# Child Restraints

## Older Children



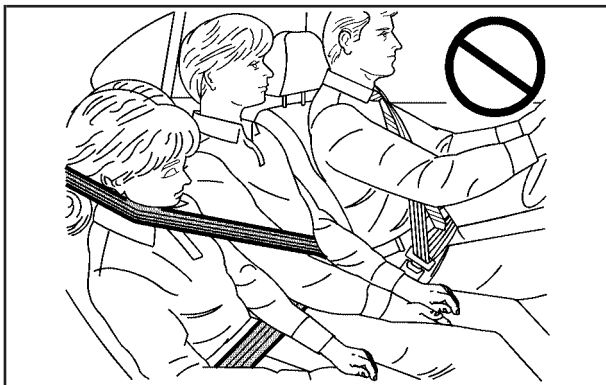
Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

**Q:** What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

**A:** An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear seat.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never do this.**

**Here two children are wearing the same belt. The belt can not properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A belt must be used by only one person at a time.**

**Q:** What if a child is wearing a lap-shoulder belt, but the child is so small that the shoulder belt is very close to the child's face or neck?

**A:** If the child is sitting in a seat next to a window, move the child toward the center of the vehicle. Also see *Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides on page 35*. If the child is sitting in the center rear seat passenger position, move the child toward the safety belt buckle. In either case, be sure that the shoulder belt still is on the child's shoulder, so that in a crash the child's upper body would have the restraint the belts provide.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never do this.**

**Here a child is sitting in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt, but the shoulder part is behind the child. If the child wears the belt in this way, in a crash the child might slide under the belt. The belt's force would then be applied right on the child's abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries.**

Wherever the child sits, the lap portion of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the child's thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash.



## Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

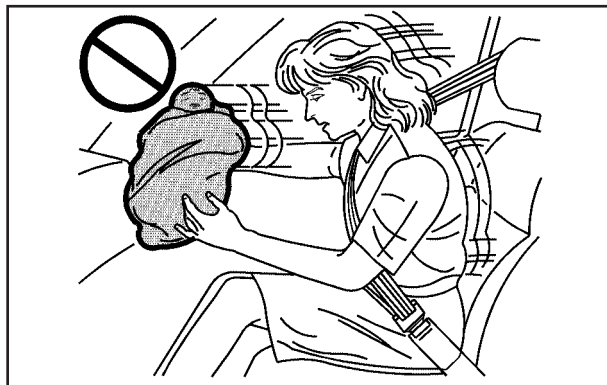
### CAUTION:

**Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.**

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate restraints. Young children should not use the vehicle's adult safety belts alone, unless there is no other choice. Instead, they need to use a child restraint.

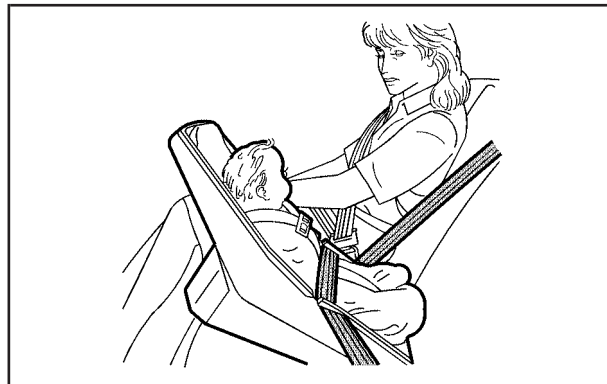
**⚠ CAUTION:**

People should never hold a baby in their arms while riding in a vehicle. A baby does not weigh much — until a crash. During a crash a baby will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it. For example, in a crash at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12 lb (5.5 kg) baby will suddenly become a 240 lb (110 kg) force on a person's arms. A baby should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide.**



**Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?**

**A:** Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

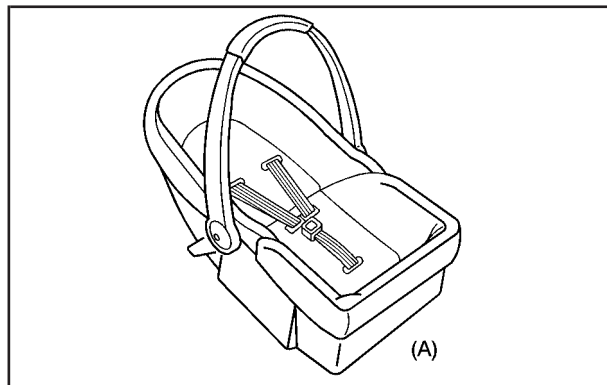
 **CAUTION:**

**Newborn infants need complete support, including support for the head and neck. This is necessary because a newborn infant's neck is weak and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing seat settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants always should be secured in appropriate infant restraints.**

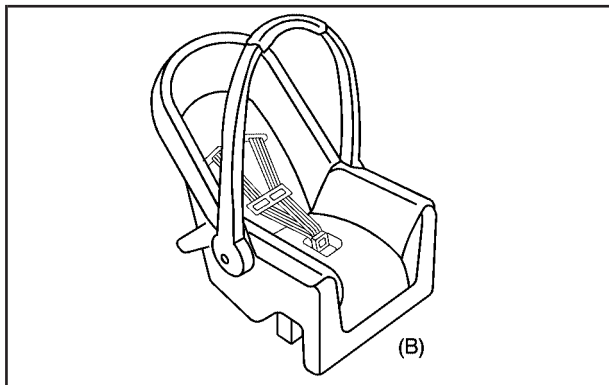
**⚠ CAUTION:**

The body structure of a young child is quite unlike that of an adult or older child, for whom the safety belts are designed. A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. Young children always should be secured in appropriate child restraints.

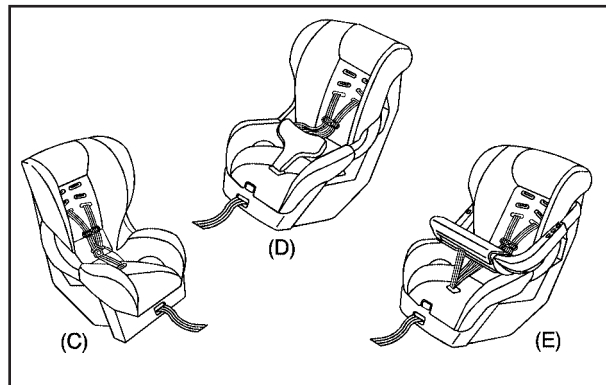
## Child Restraint Systems



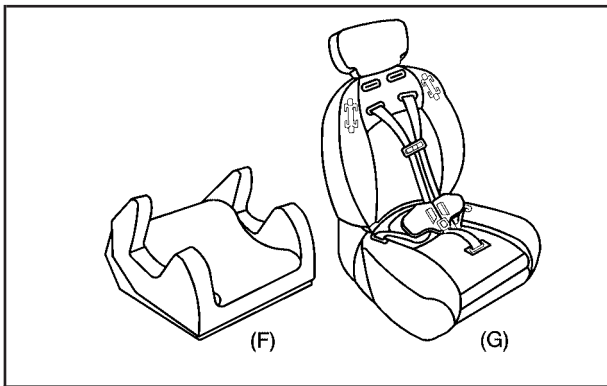
An infant car bed (A), a special bed made for use in a motor vehicle, is an infant restraint system designed to restrain or position a child on a continuous flat surface. Make sure that the infant's head rests toward the center of the vehicle.



A rear-facing infant seat (B) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant. The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.



A forward-facing child seat (C-E) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness and also sometimes with surfaces such as T-shaped or shelf-like shields.



A booster seat (F-G) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. Some booster seats have a shoulder belt positioner, and some high-back booster seats have a five-point harness. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

## **Q: How Should I Use a Child Restraint?**

**A:** A child restraint system is any device designed for use in a motor vehicle to restrain, seat, or position children. A built-in child restraint system is a permanent part of the motor vehicle. An add-on child restraint system is a portable one, which is purchased by the vehicle's owner. To help reduce injuries, an add-on child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. With built-in or add-on child restraints, the child has to be secured within the child restraint.

When choosing an add-on child restraint, be sure the child restraint is designed to be used in a vehicle. If it is, it will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards. Then follow the instructions for the restraint. You may find these instructions on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both.

## Securing an Add-on Child Restraint in the Vehicle

### CAUTION:

**A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle using the vehicle's safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.**

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system.

See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)* on page 51 for more information. A child can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.



## Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

There are several systems for securing the child within the child restraint. One system, the three-point harness, has straps that come down over each of the infant's shoulders and buckle together at the crotch. The five-point harness system has two shoulder straps, two hip straps, and a crotch strap. A shield may take the place of hip straps. A T-shaped shield has shoulder straps that are attached to a flat pad which rests low against the child's body. A shelf- or armrest-type shield has straps that are attached to a wide, shelf-like shield that swings up or to the side.

### CAUTION:

**A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Make sure the child is properly secured, following the instructions that came with that restraint.**

Because there are different systems, it is important to refer to the instructions that come with the restraint. A child can be endangered in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint.

## Where to Put the Restraint

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. We recommend that child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat.

Your vehicle has a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint. A label on your sun visor says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

### CAUTION:

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

### **CAUTION: (Continued)**

**Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.**

Wherever you install a child restraint, be sure to secure the child restraint properly. Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

## Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

Your vehicle has the LATCH system. The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

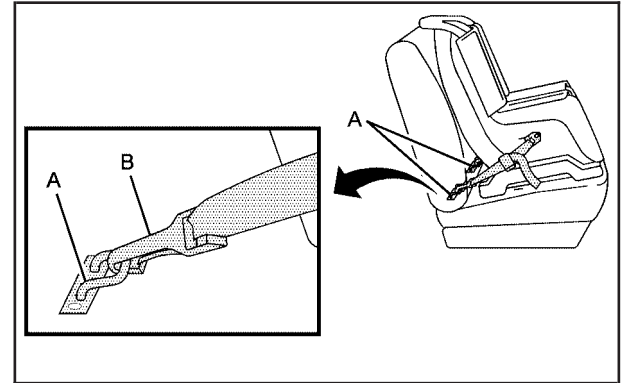
Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint equipped with LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

Your vehicle has lower anchors and top tether anchors. Your child restraint may have lower attachments and a top tether.

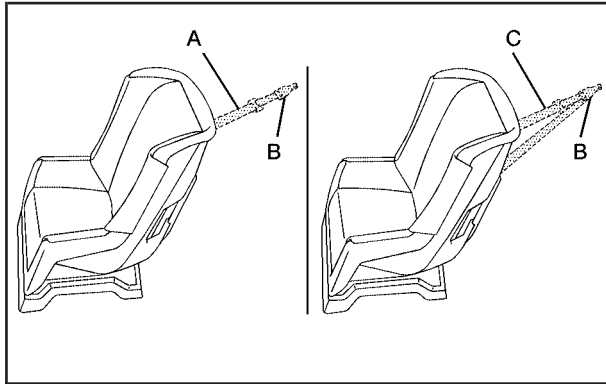
Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

### Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

## Top Tether Anchor



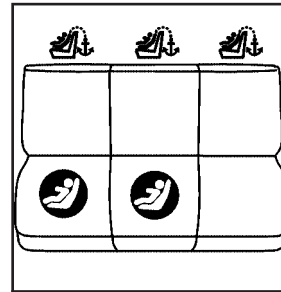
A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.


Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.


Some top tether-equipped child restraints are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. In the United States, some child restraints also have a top tether. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

If the child restraint does not have a top tether, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.

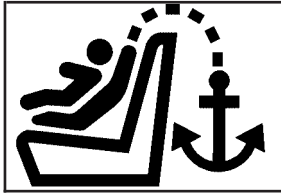
## Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



 (Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

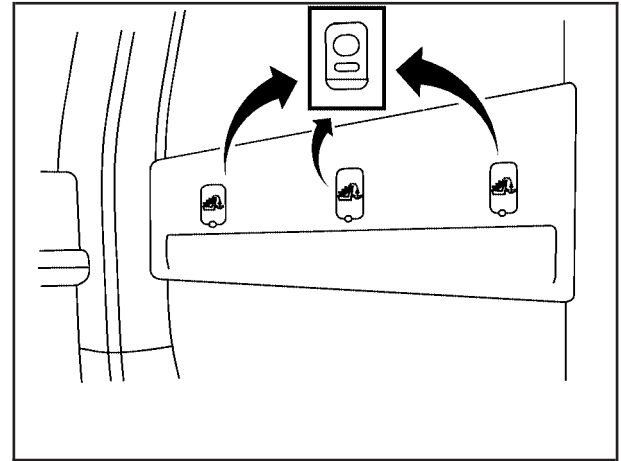
 (Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

The rear passenger side and center seating positions have exposed metal lower anchors located in the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.



There is an anchor symbol on the trim cover to assist you in locating the top tether anchors.

There are covered top tether anchors for each seating position located on the back panel of your vehicle, behind the rear seat. Remove the trim covers to access the anchor.



Do not secure a child restraint in the right front passenger's position, if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached. There is no place to attach the top tether in this position.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 50* for additional information.

## Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

### CAUTION:

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Make sure that a LATCH-type child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

### CAUTION:

Each top tether anchor and lower anchor in the vehicle is designed to hold only one child restraint. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured if this happens. To help prevent injury to people and damage to your vehicle, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

 **CAUTION:**

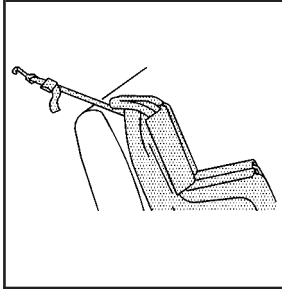
Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Secure any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if your vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed. Be sure to follow the instructions of the child restraint manufacturer.

**Notice:** Contact between the child restraint or the LATCH attachment parts and the vehicle's safety belt assembly may cause damage to these parts. Make sure when securing unused safety belts behind the child restraint that there is no contact between the child restraint or the LATCH attachment parts and the vehicle's safety belt assembly.

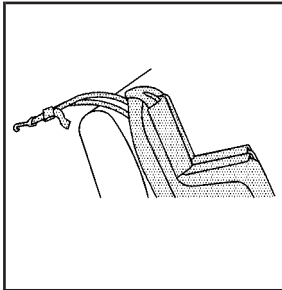
Folding an empty rear seat with the safety belts secured may cause damage to the safety belt or the seat. When removing the child restraint, always remember to return the safety belts to their normal, stowed position before folding the rear seat.

1. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach the top tether to the top tether anchor. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
  - 1.1. If the position you are using has an adjustable head restraint, raise the head restraint.
  - 1.2. Raise the seat cushion by pulling up on the strap loop at the rear of the seat cushion. See *Rear Seat Operation on page 14* for additional information. Then fold the seat cushion forward.
  - 1.3. Fold the seatback forward.
  - 1.4. Place the child restraint in the vehicle, near the seating position that you are using.

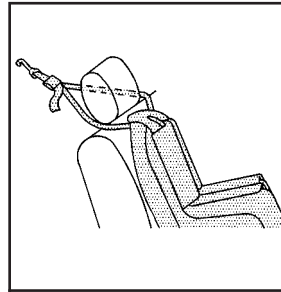
1.5. Route the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



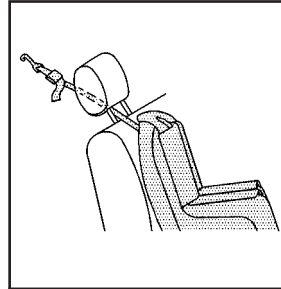
If the position you are using does not have a head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using does not have a head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using has an adjustable head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the head restraint.



If the position you are using has an adjustable head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the head restraint and route the tether under the head restraint and in between the head restraint posts.



- 1.6. Remove the trim cover to expose the top tether anchor.
- 1.7. Attach the top tether attachment to the top tether anchor.

 **CAUTION:**

**If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

- 1.8. Lift the seatback up and push it rearward. Then lower the seat cushion until the seatback and the seat cushion lock into position.

2. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
  - 2.1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
  - 2.2. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
  - 2.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
3. Tighten the top tether.
4. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

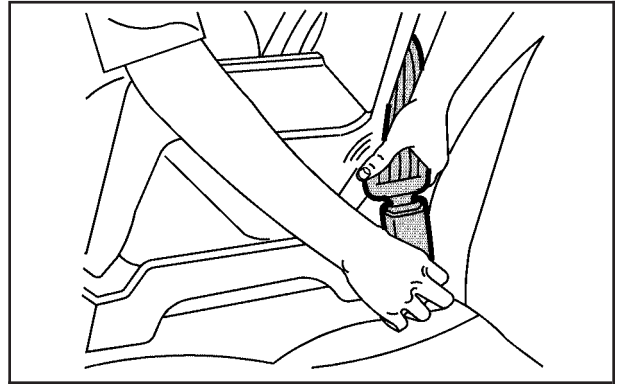
## Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position

There is limited space in the rear seating area. If you want to secure a child restraint in a rear outboard seating position, be sure to study the instructions that came with your child restraint to see if there is enough room to secure your seat properly.

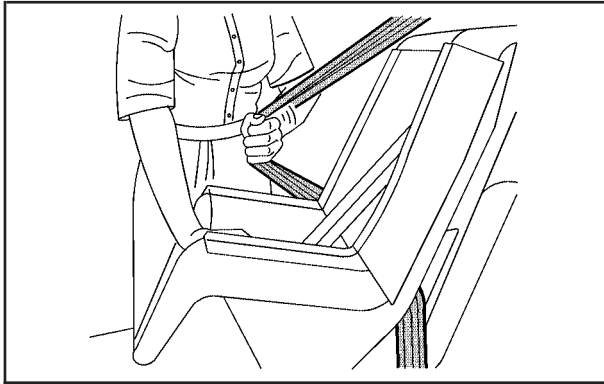
If your child restraint is equipped with the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)* on page 51.

If your child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

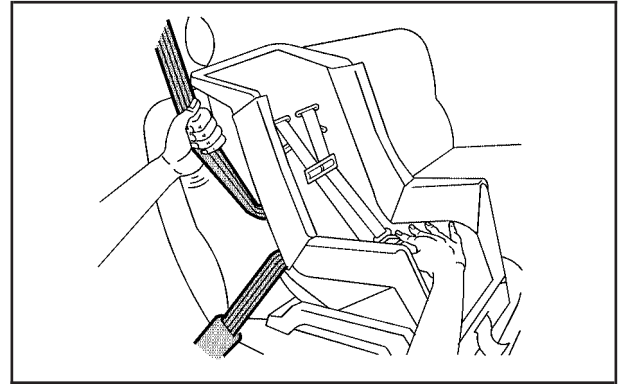
1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



4. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

6. If your child restraint manufacturer recommends using a top tether, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor. Refer to the instructions that came with the child restraint and to *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)* on page 51.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, if the top tether is attached to the top tether anchor, disconnect it. Unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

## Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position

Your vehicle has a right front passenger's airbag. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint* on page 50.

In addition, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system. The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag when an infant in a rear-facing infant seat or a small child in a forward-facing child restraint or booster seat is detected. See *Passenger Sensing System* on page 73 and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* on page 172 for more information on this including important safety information.

A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

 **CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger’s airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.**

**Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger’s frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.**

If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat position, move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint. See *Power Seats on page 8*.

If your child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 51*.

There is no top tether anchor at the right front seating position. Do not secure a child seat in this position if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be anchored. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 51* if the child restraint has a top tether.

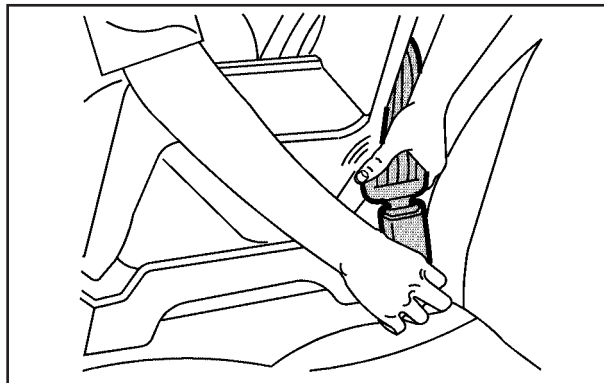
You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Your vehicle has a right front passenger's frontal airbag. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 73*. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If your child restraint is forward-facing, move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the child restraint in this seat. See *Power Seats on page 8*.

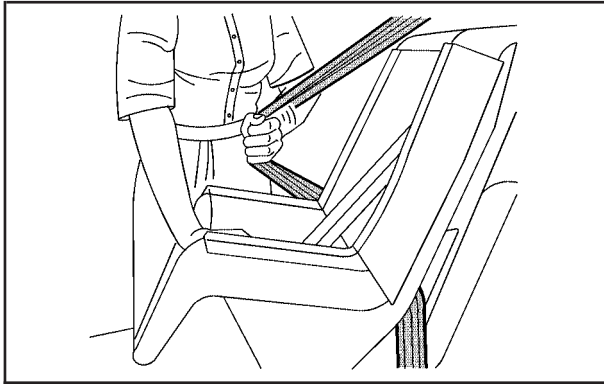
When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you turn the ignition to RUN or START. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 172*.

2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

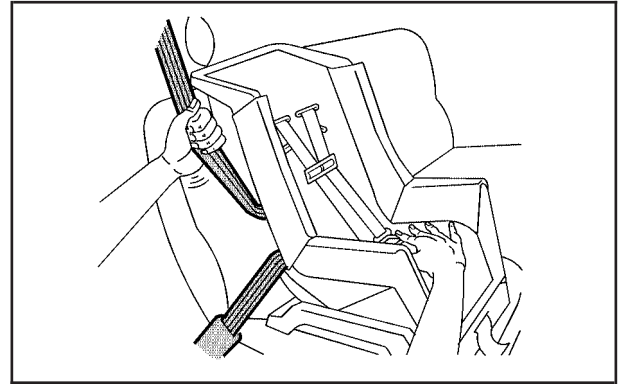
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



5. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt. You should not be able to pull more of the belt from the retractor once the lock has been set.

7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.
8. If the airbag is off, the off indicator will come on and stay on when the key is turned to RUN or START.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the child restraint.

If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle and check with your dealer.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

## **Airbag System**

Your vehicle has an airbag for the driver and an airbag for the right front passenger.

Frontal airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating frontal airbag. But these airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job and comply with federal regulations.



Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

 **CAUTION:**

**You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. All airbags are designed to work with safety belts, but do not replace them.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**Airbags are designed to deploy in moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crashes. They are not designed to inflate in rollover, rear crashes, or in many side crashes. And, for some unrestrained occupants, airbags may provide less protection in frontal crashes than more forceful airbags have provided in the past. Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.**

 **CAUTION:**

Airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. If you are too close to an inflating airbag, as you would be if you were leaning forward, it could seriously injure you. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

 **CAUTION:**

Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer the best protection for adults, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 38* and *Infants and Young Children on page 41*.



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 171* for more information.

## Where Are the Airbags?



The driver's airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.



The right front passenger's airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the bag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

## When Should an Airbag Inflate?

The driver's and right front passenger's frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes. But they are designed to inflate only if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds take into account a variety of desired deployment and non-deployment events and are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. Whether your frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

In addition, your vehicle has "dual stage" frontal airbags, which adjust the restraint according to crash severity. Your vehicle has electronic frontal sensors which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, these airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

If the front of your vehicle goes straight into a wall that does not move or deform, the threshold level for the reduced deployment is about 10 to 16 mph (16 to 25 km/h), and the threshold level for a full deployment is about 20 to 30 mph (32 to 48 km/h). The threshold level can vary, however, with specific vehicle design, so that it can be somewhat above or below this range.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.
- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object that does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

The frontal airbags (driver and right front passenger) are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

Vehicles with dual stage airbags also have a special sensor which enables the sensing system to monitor the position of the driver's front seat. The seat position sensor provides information which is used to determine if the airbags should deploy at a reduced level or at full deployment.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. Inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

The airbag system is designed to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including off-road usage. Observe safe driving speeds, especially on rough terrain. As always, wear your safety belt. See *Off-Road Driving on page 265* for tips on off-road driving.

## **What Makes an Airbag Inflate?**

In an impact of sufficient severity, the airbag sensing system detects that the vehicle is in a crash. The sensing system triggers a release of gas from the inflator, which inflates the airbag. The inflator, airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag modules inside the steering wheel and in the instrument panel in front of the right front passenger.

## How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. The airbag supplements the protection provided by safety belts. Airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. But airbags would not help you in many types of collisions, including rollovers, rear impacts, and many side impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts, and then only in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal collisions.

## What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After an airbag inflates, it quickly deflates, so quickly that some people may not even realize the airbag inflated. Some components of the airbag module — the steering wheel hub for the driver's airbag or the instrument panel for the right front passenger's bag — may be hot for a short time. The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch.

There will be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it stop people from leaving the vehicle.

 **CAUTION:**

**When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.**

In many crashes severe enough to inflate an airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After they inflate, you will need some new parts for your airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- Your vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Recorders on page 480*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on your airbag system. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

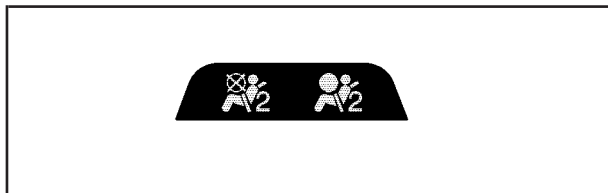


## Passenger Sensing System

Your vehicle has a passenger sensing system. The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible when you turn your ignition key to RUN or START.



United States



Canada

The words ON and OFF or the symbol for on and off, will be visible on the rearview mirror during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or the word OFF, or the symbol for on or the symbol for off will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 172*.

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver's airbag is not part of the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger's seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. We recommend that child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat.

Your vehicle has a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint. A label on your sun visor says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

Never put a child in a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat unless the passenger airbag status indicator shows off and the airbag is off. Here is why:

 **CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.**

**If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.**

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag if:

- The right front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat.
- A right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- The right front passenger seat is occupied by a smaller person, such as a child who has outgrown child restraints.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the passenger's frontal airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is off.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the

child restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's directions and refer to *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position* on page 60.

If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle and check with your dealer.

The passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the right front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger's seat. When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is active.

For some children who have outgrown child restraints and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger's seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens, turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the fully upright position, then sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and then enable the right front passenger's airbag.



 **CAUTION:**

**If the airbag readiness light in the instrument panel cluster ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger's seat may not have the protection of the frontal airbag. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 171* for more on this, including important safety information.**

Aftermarket equipment, such as seat covers, can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. You may want to consider not using seat covers or other aftermarket equipment if your vehicle has the passenger sensing system. See *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 79* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

 **CAUTION:**

**Stowing of articles under the passenger's seat or between the passenger's seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.**

## Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how your vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around your vehicle. You do not want the system to inflate while someone is working on your vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing your vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 487*.

### CAUTION:

**For up to 10 seconds after the ignition key is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.**

The airbag system does not need regular maintenance.

## Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

**Q:** Is there anything I might add to the front of the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?

**A:** Yes. If you add things that change your vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Also, the airbag system may not work properly if you relocate any of the airbag sensors. If you have any questions about this, you should contact Customer Assistance before you modify your vehicle. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 468*.

**Q:** Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my advanced airbag system?

**A:** Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, the inside review mirror, or airbag wiring can affect the operation of the airbag system. If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 468*.

# Restraint System Check

## Checking the Restraint Systems

Now and then, make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. See *Care of Safety Belts on page 426* for more information.

Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Also look for any opened or broken airbag covers, and have them repaired or replaced. The airbag system does not need regular maintenance.

**Notice:** If you damage the covering for the driver's or the right front passenger's airbag, the airbag may not work properly. You may have to replace the airbag module in the steering wheel or both the airbag module and the instrument panel for the right front passenger's airbag. Do not open or break the airbag coverings.



## Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

### CAUTION:

**A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.**

If you have had a crash, do you need new belts or LATCH system parts?

After a very minor collision, nothing may be necessary. But if the belts were stretched, as they would be if worn during a more severe crash, then you need new parts.

If the LATCH system was being used during a more severe crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

If belts are cut or damaged, replace them. Collision damage also may mean you will need to have LATCH system, safety belt or seat parts repaired or replaced. New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the belt or LATCH system was not being used at the time of the collision.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See the part on the airbag system earlier in this section.



## Section 2 Features and Controls

---

<b>Keys</b> .....	85	Engine Coolant Heater .....	103
Remote Keyless Entry System .....	86	Automatic Transmission Operation .....	105
Remote Keyless Entry System Operation ....	87	Tow/Haul Mode .....	108
<b>Doors and Locks</b> .....	90	Parking Brake .....	109
Door Locks .....	90	Shifting Into Park (P) .....	110
Power Door Locks .....	91	Shifting Out of Park (P) .....	112
Delayed Locking .....	92	Parking Over Things That Burn .....	112
Programmable Automatic Door Locks .....	92	Engine Exhaust .....	113
Tailgate .....	92	Running the Engine While Parked .....	114
<b>Windows</b> .....	94	<b>Mirrors</b> .....	115
Power Windows .....	95	Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar <sup>®</sup> , Compass and Temperature Display .....	115
Sliding Rear Window .....	96	Outside Power Mirrors .....	118
Sun Visors .....	96	Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors .....	119
<b>Theft-Deterrent Systems</b> .....	96	Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror .....	120
Content Theft-Deterrent .....	96	Outside Curb View Assist Mirrors .....	120
Passlock <sup>®</sup> .....	98	Outside Convex Mirror .....	121
<b>Starting and Operating Your Vehicle</b> .....	99	Outside Heated Mirrors .....	121
New Vehicle Break-In .....	99	<b>OnStar<sup>®</sup> System</b> .....	122
Ignition Positions .....	100		
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) .....	101		
Starting the Engine .....	102		

## Section 2 Features and Controls

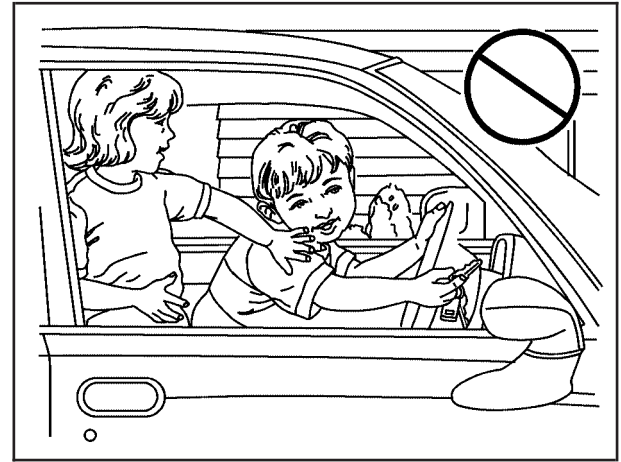
---

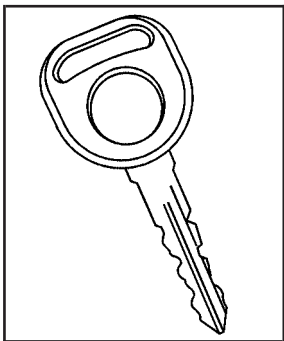
<b>Universal Home Remote System</b> .....	124	<b>Storage Areas</b> .....	136
Universal Home Remote System (With Three Round LED) .....	124	Glove Box .....	136
Universal Home Remote System (With One Triangular LED) .....	125	Cupholder(s) .....	136
Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED) .....	126	Center Console Storage Area .....	136
Universal Home Remote System Operation (With One Triangular LED) .....	132	Tonneau Cover .....	136
		<b>Sunroof</b> .....	138

# Keys

## CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The children or others could be badly injured or even killed. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.





Your vehicle has one double-sided key for the ignition, all door locks, and the spare tire hoist lock if your vehicle has one.

If you ever lose your keys, your dealer will be able to assist you with obtaining replacements.

**Notice:** If you ever lock your keys in your vehicle, you may have to damage the vehicle to get in. Be sure you have spare keys.

If you ever do get locked out of your vehicle, call the GM Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 474*.

## Remote Keyless Entry System

Your keyless entry system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

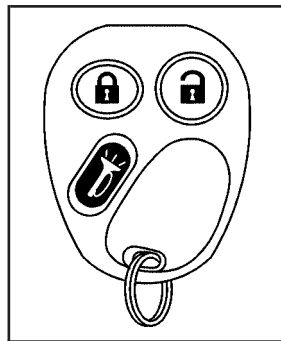
Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

At times you may notice a decrease in operating range. This is normal for any remote keyless entry system. If the transmitter does not work or if you have to stand closer to your vehicle for the transmitter to work, try this:

- Check the distance. You may be too far from your vehicle. You may need to stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check to determine if battery replacement is necessary. See “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry System Operation on page 87*.
- If you are still having trouble, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.


## Remote Keyless Entry System Operation


You can lock and unlock your doors from about 3 feet (1 m) up to 100 feet (30 m) away using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter supplied with your vehicle.



**🔓 (Unlock):** Press this button once to unlock the driver’s door. The interior lamps will come on. Pressing unlock again within three seconds will cause the remaining doors to unlock.

You can choose different feedback options for each press of the unlock button. See “Lock Feedback” and “Unlock Feedback” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 199* for more information.

 **(Lock):** Press this button once to lock all of the doors. Pressing lock again within three seconds may cause the horn to chirp for lock confirmation. You can choose different feedback options for each press of the lock button. See “Lock Feedback” and “Unlock Feedback” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 199* for more information.

 **(Panic):** Press this button to sound the horn and flash the headlamps and taillamps for up to 30 seconds. Panic can be turned off by pressing the button again, by waiting for 30 seconds, or by starting the vehicle.

## Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle

Each RKE transmitter is coded to prevent another transmitter from unlocking your vehicle. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased through your dealer. Remember to bring any remaining transmitters with you when you go to your dealer. When the dealer matches the replacement transmitter to your vehicle, any remaining transmitters must also be matched. Once your dealer has coded the new transmitter, the lost transmitter will not unlock your vehicle. Each vehicle can have a maximum of four transmitters matched to it.

## Battery Replacement

Under normal use, the battery in your RKE transmitter should last about two years.

You can tell the battery is weak if the transmitter will not work at the normal range in any location. If you have to get close to your vehicle before the transmitter works, it is probably time to change the battery.

**Notice:** When replacing the battery, use care not to touch any of the circuitry. Static from your body transferred to these surfaces may damage the transmitter.



To replace the battery in the RKE transmitter, do the following:



1. Insert a thin object, such as a coin, in the slot between the covers of the transmitter housing near the key ring hole. Remove the bottom by twisting the coin.
2. Remove and replace the battery with a three-volt CR2032 or equivalent battery, positive (+) side up.
3. Align the covers and snap them together.
4. Resynchronize the transmitter. See “Resynchronization” following this information.
5. Check the operation of the transmitter.

## Resynchronization

Resynchronization may be necessary due to the security method used by this system. The transmitter does not send the same signal twice to the receiver. The receiver will not respond to a signal that has been sent previously. This prevents anyone from recording and playing back the signal from the transmitter.

To resynchronize your transmitter, stand close to your vehicle and press and hold the lock and unlock buttons on the transmitter at the same time for 15 seconds. The door locks should cycle to confirm synchronization. If the locks do not cycle, see your dealer for service.

# Doors and Locks

## Door Locks

### CAUTION:

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. You increase the chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash if the doors are not locked. So, wear safety belts properly and lock the doors whenever you drive.

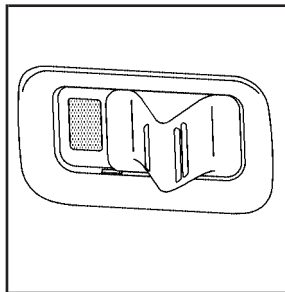
**CAUTION: (Continued)**

### CAUTION: (Continued)

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock your vehicle whenever you leave it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.

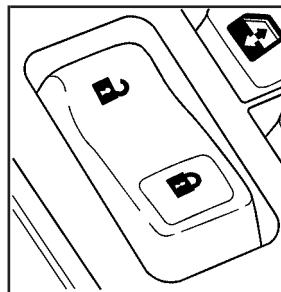
There are several ways to lock and unlock your vehicle.

To unlock the door from the outside, use the keyless entry system or the key.



To unlock or lock the door from the inside, slide the manual lever forward or rearward.

## Power Door Locks



If your vehicle is equipped with power door locks, press the raised side of the switch, with the lock symbol, on either front door to lock all the doors at once.

Press the recessed side of the switch with the unlock symbol, to unlock all the doors at once.

The power door locks will operate at any time even when the ignition is off.

Operating the power locks may interact with the theft-deterrent system (if equipped). See *Content Theft-Deterrent* on page 96.

## Delayed Locking

When locking the doors with the power lock switch or the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and a door or the liftgate is open, the doors will lock five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use.

Pressing the power lock switch or the lock button on the RKE transmitter twice will override the delayed locking feature and immediately lock all the doors.

You can turn the delayed locking feature off or back on again by doing the following:

1. Press and hold the power door lock switch in the lock position.
2. Press unlock twice on the RKE transmitter.

This feature will not operate if the key is in the ignition.

You can also program this feature using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See “Door Lock Delay” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 199*.

## Programmable Automatic Door Locks

Your vehicle has an automatic lock/unlock feature which enables you to program the vehicle’s power door locks. You can program this feature through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 199* for more information on DIC programming.

## Tailgate

You can open the tailgate by lifting up on its handle while pulling the tailgate toward you.

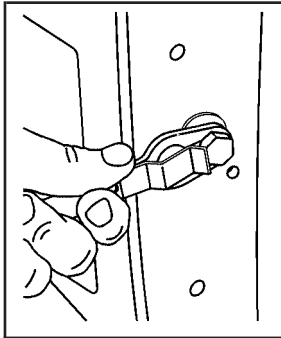
To shut the tailgate, firmly push it upward until it latches.

After you put the tailgate back up, pull it back towards you to be sure it latches securely.

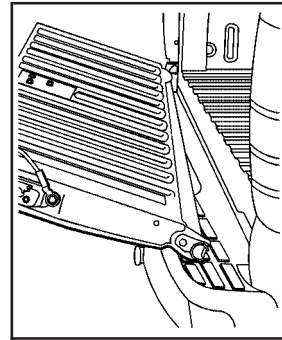
## Tailgate Removal

The tailgate on your vehicle can be removed to allow for different loading situations. Although the tailgate can be removed without assistance, you may want someone to assist you with the removal to avoid possible damage to the vehicle.

To remove the tailgate, do the following:



1. Raise the tailgate slightly and release both retaining cable clips. To release the retaining cable clips, lift the cable so it points straight out and push the cable clip forward.



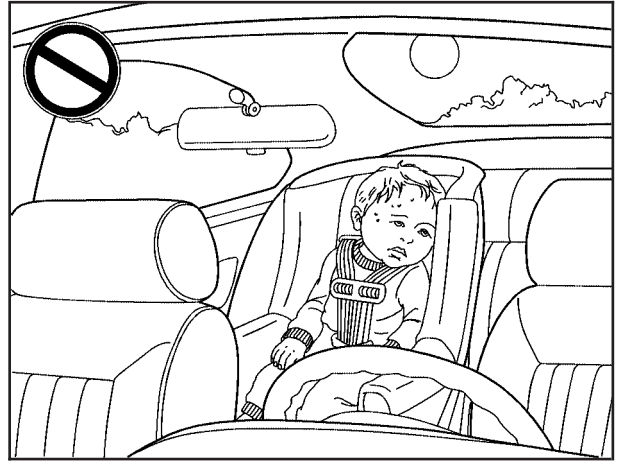
2. With the tailgate at a slight upward angle, pull back on the tailgate at the right edge and then move the tailgate to the right to release the left edge.

Reverse the above procedure to reinstall. Make sure the tailgate is secure.

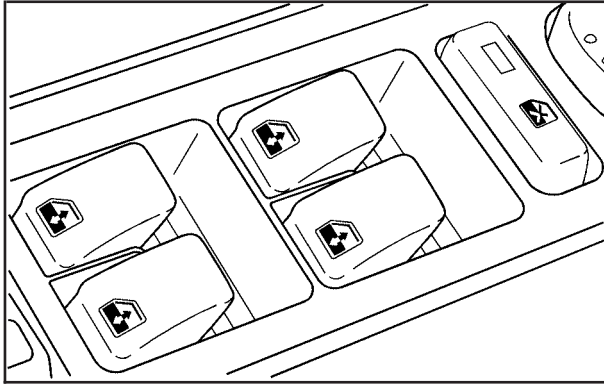
# Windows

## CAUTION:

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.



## Power Windows



A power window control is located on the inside of each door.

The driver's door has a switch for the passenger windows as well. Your power windows will work when the ignition has been turned to ACCESSORY or RUN or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* on page 101.


Press the switch to lower the window.

Pull up the front of the switch to raise the window.

## Express-Down Windows

The driver and passenger windows also have an express-down feature that allows the windows to be lowered without holding the switch. Press down fully on the window switch, then release, to activate the express-down mode. This mode can be canceled at any time by pulling up on the switch. To open the window partway, press the switch to the first position until the window is at the desired position.

## Window Lockout

 **(Lockout):** Your vehicle has a lockout feature to prevent passengers from operating the power windows. The lockout switch is located in front of the window switches on the driver's door. A light in the lockout switch will come on to show that the switch has been activated. Press the lockout switch again to return to normal operation.

## Sliding Rear Window

If your vehicle has this feature, squeeze the latch in the center of the window and slide the glass to open it.

When you close the window, be sure the latch is engaged.

The sliding rear window does not have rear defogger.

## Sun Visors

### Sun Visors with Slide Rod

Your vehicle may have this feature. Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Detach the sun visor from the center mount and slide it along the rod from side-to-side to cover the driver or passenger side of the front window. Swing the sun visor to the side to cover the side window. It can also be moved along the rod from side-to-side in this position.

### Sun Visors with Fixed Rod and Pull-out Extension

Your vehicle may have this feature. Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Pull the sun visor extender out for additional coverage. Detach the sun visor from the center mount and swing it to the side to cover the side window.

## Lighted Visor Vanity Mirror

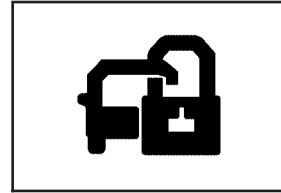
Your vehicle has lighted visor vanity mirrors on both the driver's and passenger's sun visors. Pull the sun visor down and lift the mirror cover to turn the lamps on.

## Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. Although your vehicle has a number of theft-deterrent features, we know that nothing we put on it can make it impossible to steal.

### Content Theft-Deterrent

Your vehicle is equipped with a content theft-deterrent alarm system.



With this system, the security light on the cluster will flash as you open the door (if your ignition is off), to let you know that you are activating the system.



This message reminds you to activate the theft-deterrent system. Here is how to do it:

1. Open the door.
2. Lock the door with the remote keyless entry transmitter. The security light should come on and flash. The door does not need to be open.
3. Close all of the doors. The light will stop flashing and stay solid. The security light should go off after approximately 30 seconds. The alarm is not armed until the security light goes off. If the delayed locking feature is active, the alarm will not activate until all doors are closed and the security light goes off.

Once the system is armed, if a door is opened without the remote keyless entry transmitter, the alarm will go off. Depending on how you have programmed the alarm in the secondary information center, the horn may sound, the headlamps may flash or both the headlamps and the horn will activate.

Remember, the theft-deterrent system will not activate if you lock the doors with a key, the manual door lock or the power door lock switch. It activates only if you use the remote keyless entry transmitter. You should also remember that you can start your vehicle with the correct ignition key if the alarm has been set off.

Here is how to avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- If you do not want to activate the theft-deterrent system, the vehicle should be locked with the door key after the doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the remote keyless entry transmitter. Unlocking a door any other way will set off the alarm if the system has been armed.

If you set off the alarm by accident, you can turn off the alarm by pressing unlock on the remote keyless entry transmitter or by placing the key in the ignition and turning it to START.

## Testing the Alarm

The alarm can be tested by following these steps:

1. From inside the vehicle, lower the driver's window and open the driver's door.
2. Activate the system by locking the doors with the remote keyless entry transmitter.
3. Get out of the vehicle, close the door and wait for the security message to go out.
4. Then reach in through the window, unlock the door with the manual door lock and open the door. This should set off the alarm.

If the alarm does not sound and the headlamps do not flash, you may have the feature turned off. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 199* for more information.

## Passlock<sup>®</sup>

Your vehicle has the Passlock<sup>®</sup> theft-deterrent system.

Passlock<sup>®</sup> is a passive theft-deterrent system. Passlock<sup>®</sup> enables fuel if the ignition lock cylinder is turned with a valid key. If a correct key is not used or the ignition lock cylinder is tampered with, fuel is disabled.

If the engine stalls and the security light flashes, wait until the light stops flashing before trying to restart the engine. Remember to release the key from START as soon as the engine starts.

If the engine is running and the security light comes on, you will be able to restart the engine if you turn the engine off. However, your Passlock<sup>®</sup> system is not working properly and must be serviced by your dealer. Your vehicle is not protected by Passlock<sup>®</sup> at this time. You may also want to check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 436*. See your dealer for service.

In an emergency, call the GM Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 474*.

# Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

## New Vehicle Break-In

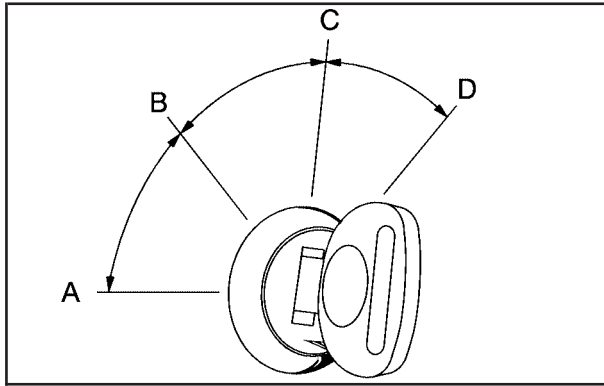
**Notice:** Your vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- Keep your speed at 55 mph (88 km/h) or less for the first 500 miles (805 km).
- Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 500 miles (805 km). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake, or slow, the vehicle.

- Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time your new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.
- Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Towing a Trailer on page 304* for the trailer towing capabilities of your vehicle and more information.

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

## Ignition Positions



Use the key to turn the ignition switch to four different positions.

**A (LOCK):** This position locks the ignition and transmission. It is a theft-deterrent feature. You will only be able to remove the key when the ignition is turned to LOCK.

**Notice:** Using a tool to force the key from the ignition switch could cause damage or break the key. Use the correct key and turn the key only with your hand. Make sure the key is all the way in. If it is, turn the steering wheel left and right while you turn the key hard. If none of this works, then your vehicle needs service.

**B (ACCESSORY):** This position lets you use things like the radio and the windshield wipers when the engine is off.

**Notice:** Lengthy operation of features such as the radio in the accessory ignition position may drain the battery and prevent your vehicle from starting. Do not operate your vehicle in the accessory ignition position for a long period of time.

**C (RUN):** This is the position for driving. It is the position the switch returns to after the engine starts, and you release the key.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ACCESSORY or RUN position with the engine off. You may not be able to start your vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

**D (START):** This position starts the engine.

## Key In the Ignition

Never leave your vehicle with the keys inside, as it is an easy target for joy riders or thieves. If you leave the key in the ignition and park your vehicle, a chime will sound, when you open the driver's door. Always remember to remove your key from the ignition and take it with you. This will lock your ignition and transaxle. Also, always remember to lock the doors.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ignition while your vehicle is parked. You may not be able to start your vehicle after it has been parked for an extended period of time.

## Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The Retained Accessory Power (RAP) feature will allow certain features on your vehicle to continue to work for up to 10 minutes after the ignition key is turned to LOCK or until one of the doors is opened.

## Starting the Engine

Move your shift lever to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). Your engine will not start in any other position — that is a safety feature. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

**Notice:** Do not try to shift to PARK (P) if your vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to PARK (P) only when your vehicle is stopped.

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Your vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects the electrical system. If the ignition key is turned to the START, and then released when the engine

begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking until the vehicle starts or until it exceeds the maximum cranking time allowed, approximately 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. The engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY or LOCK.

**Notice:** Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor and drain the battery. Waiting about 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down, will prevent damage due to overheating.

2. If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor, while you hold the ignition key in START. When the engine starts, let go of the key and let up on the accelerator pedal. Wait about 15 seconds between each try.

When starting your engine in very cold weather (below 0°F or -18°C), do this:

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START and hold it there up to 15 seconds. When the engine starts, let go of the key.
2. If your engine still will not start, or starts but then stops, it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing your accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for about three seconds. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing, but this time keep the pedal down for five or six seconds. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine.

**Notice:** Your engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you do not, your engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.

## Engine Coolant Heater

Your vehicle may have an engine coolant heater.

In very cold weather, 0°F (-18°C) or colder, the engine coolant heater can help. You will get easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up.

Usually, the coolant heater should be plugged in a minimum of four hours prior to starting your vehicle. At temperatures above 32°F (0°C), use of the coolant heater is not required. Your vehicle may also have an internal thermostat in the plug end of the cord. This will prevent operation of the engine coolant heater when the temperature is at or above 0°F (-18°C) as noted on the cord.

## To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is located on the driver's side of the engine compartment, near the power steering fluid reservoir.
3. Plug the cord into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

### CAUTION:

**Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.**

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

How long should you keep the coolant heater plugged in? The answer depends on the outside temperature, the kind of oil you have, and some other things. Instead of trying to list everything here, we ask that you contact your dealer in the area where you will be parking your vehicle. The dealer can give you the best advice for that particular area.



## Automatic Transmission Operation

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission and features an electronic shift position indicator located within the instrument panel cluster.

**P R N D 3 2 1**

There are several different positions for your shift lever.

**PARK (P):** This position locks your drive wheels. It is the best position to use when you start your engine because your vehicle cannot move easily.

### **CAUTION:**

**It is dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P). See *Shifting Into Park (P)* on page 110. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer* on page 304.**

**REVERSE (R):** Use this gear to back up.

**Notice:** Shifting to **REVERSE (R)** while your vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Shift to **REVERSE (R)** only after your vehicle is stopped.

To rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging your transmission, see *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 294.*

**NEUTRAL (N):** In this position, your engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when you are already moving, use **NEUTRAL (N)** only.

 **CAUTION:**

Shifting into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, your vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed.

**Notice:** Shifting out of **PARK (P)** or **NEUTRAL (N)** with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting your vehicle.

**DRIVE (D):** This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy for your vehicle. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than about 35 mph (55 km/h), push your accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

You will shift down to the next gear and have more power.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding, see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control on page 264*.

DRIVE (D) can be used when towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, driving on steep hills or for off-road driving. You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often.

**THIRD (3):** This position is also used for normal driving. It reduces vehicle speed more than DRIVE (D) without using your brakes. You might choose THIRD (3) instead of DRIVE (D) when driving on hilly, winding roads, when towing a trailer, so there is less shifting between gears and when going down a steep hill.

**SECOND (2):** This position reduces vehicle speed even more than THIRD (3) without using your brakes. You can use SECOND (2) on hills. It can help control your speed as you go down steep mountain roads, but then you would also want to use your brakes off and on.

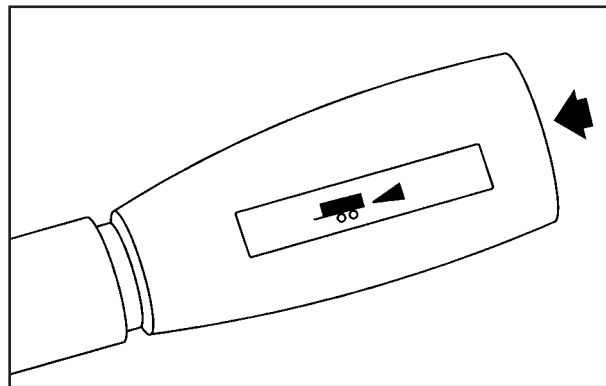
If you manually select SECOND (2), the transmission will drive in second gear. You may use this feature for reducing the speed of the rear wheels when you are trying to start your vehicle from a stop on slippery road surfaces. Once the vehicle is moving, shift into DRIVE (D). See Low Traction Mode later in this section.

**FIRST (1):** This position reduces vehicle speed even more than SECOND (2) without using your brakes. You can use it on very steep hills, or in deep snow or mud. If the shift lever is put in FIRST (1) while the vehicle is moving forward, the transmission will not shift into first gear until the vehicle is going slowly enough.

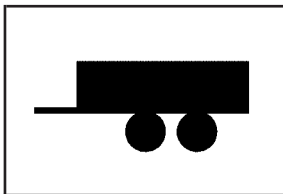
**Notice:** Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by your warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

On cold days, approximately 32°F (0°C) or colder, your transmission is designed to shift differently until the engine reaches normal operating temperature. This is intended to improve heater performance.

## Tow/Haul Mode



Your vehicle may be equipped with a Tow/Haul mode. The switch is located on the end of the column shift lever. You can use this feature to assist when towing or hauling a heavy load.



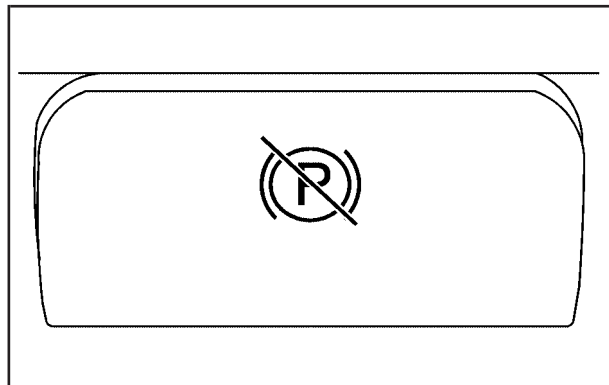
When Tow/Haul is activated the Tow/Haul symbol will illuminate on the instrument panel cluster.

See *Tow/Haul Mode* under *Towing a Trailer* on page 304 for more information.

## Parking Brake

To set the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot. Push down the parking brake pedal with your left foot.

A chime will activate and the warning light will flash when the parking brake is applied and the vehicle is moving at least 3 mph (5 km/h) for at least three seconds.



To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down. Pull the bottom edge of the lever, located above the parking brake pedal, with the parking brake symbol, to release the parking brake.

If the ignition is on when the parking brake is released, the brake system warning light will go off.

**Notice:** Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Verify that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on any hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 304*.

## Shifting Into Park (P)

### CAUTION:

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

### **CAUTION: (Continued)**

**If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 304*.**

1. Hold the brake pedal down with your right foot and set the parking brake with your left foot.
2. Move the shift lever into PARK (P) by pulling the shift lever toward you and moving it up as far as it will go.
3. Turn the ignition key to LOCK.
4. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave your vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, your vehicle is in PARK (P).

## Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running

### CAUTION:

**It can be dangerous to leave your vehicle with the engine running. Your vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave your vehicle with the engine running.**

If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in PARK (P) and the parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you move the shift lever into PARK (P), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from PARK (P) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into PARK (P).

## Torque Lock

If you are parking on a hill and you do not shift your vehicle into PARK (P) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of PARK (P). This is called torque lock. To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into PARK (P) properly before you leave the driver's seat. To find out how, see *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 110*.

When you are ready to drive, move the shift lever out of PARK (P) before you release the parking brake.

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transmission, so you can pull the shift lever out of PARK (P).

## Shifting Out of Park (P)

### Automatic Transmission

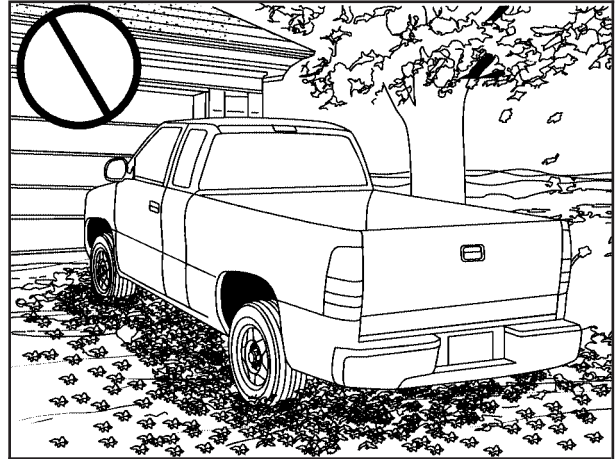
Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system which locks the shift lever in PARK (P) when the ignition is in the LOCK position. You have to fully apply your regular brakes before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition is in RUN. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 105*.

If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way up into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then, move the shift lever into the gear you want.

If you ever hold the brake pedal down but still can't shift out of PARK (P), try this:

1. Turn the key to ACCESSORY. There is no shift interlock in this key position.
2. Apply and hold the brake until the end of Step 4.
3. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL (N).
4. Start the vehicle and then shift to the gear you want.
5. Have the system fixed as soon as you can.

## Parking Over Things That Burn



### CAUTION:

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.



## Engine Exhaust

### CAUTION:

Engine exhaust can kill. It contains the gas carbon monoxide (CO), which you cannot see or smell. It can cause unconsciousness and death.

You might have exhaust coming in if:

- Your exhaust system sounds strange or different.
- Your vehicle gets rusty underneath.
- Your vehicle was damaged in a collision.

CAUTION: (Continued)

### CAUTION: (Continued)

- Your vehicle was damaged when driving over high points on the road or over road debris.
- Repairs were not done correctly.
- Your vehicle or exhaust system has been modified improperly.

If you ever suspect exhaust is coming into your vehicle:

- Drive it only with all the windows down to blow out any CO; and
- Have your vehicle fixed immediately.

## Running the Engine While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

### CAUTION:

Idling the engine with the climate control system off could allow dangerous exhaust into your vehicle. See the earlier caution under *Engine Exhaust on page 113*.

Also, idling in a closed-in place can let deadly carbon monoxide (CO) into your vehicle even if the climate control fan is at the highest setting. One place this can happen is a garage. Exhaust — with CO — can come in easily. **NEVER** park in a garage with the engine running.

Another closed-in place can be a blizzard. See *Winter Driving on page 290*.

### CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P).

Follow the proper steps to be sure your vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 110*.


If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 304*.

## Mirrors

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar<sup>®</sup>, Compass and Temperature Display

Your vehicle may have this feature. When on, an automatic dimming inside rearview mirror automatically dims to the proper level to minimize glare from lights behind you after dark.

The mirror also includes a dual display in the upper right corner of the mirror face. The compass reading and the outside temperature will both appear in the display at the same time.

 **(On/Off):** This is the on/off button.

## Temperature and Compass Display

Press the on/off button, located to the far left, briefly to turn the compass/temperature display on or off.

If the display reads CAL, you will need to calibrate the compass. For more information on calibration, see below.

To adjust between Fahrenheit and Celsius do the following:

1. Press and hold the on/off button for approximately four seconds until either a flashing F or C appears.
2. Press the button again to change the display to the desired unit of measurement. After approximately four seconds of inactivity, the new unit will be locked in and the compass/temperature display will return.

If an abnormal temperature reading is displayed for an extended period of time, please see your dealer. Under certain circumstances, a delay in updating the temperature is normal.

## Automatic Dimming Mirror Operation

The automatic dimming mirror function is turned on automatically each time the ignition is started. To operate the automatic dimming mirror, do the following:

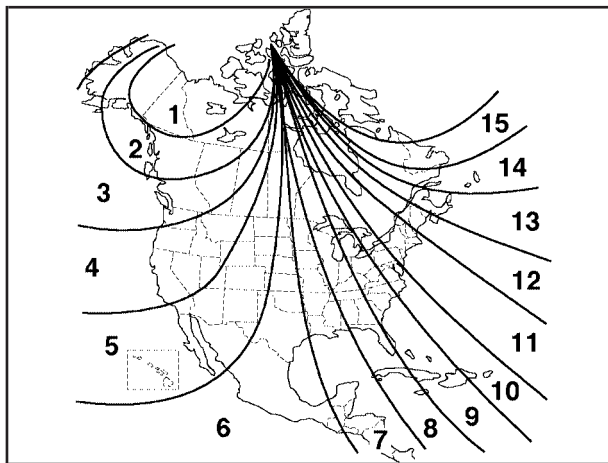
1. Make sure the green indicator light, located to the left of the on/off button, is lit. If it's not, press and hold the on/off button for approximately six seconds until the green light comes on, indicating that the mirror is in automatic dimming mode.
2. Turn off the automatic dimming mirror function by pressing and holding the on/off button for approximately six seconds, until the green indicator light turns off.

## Compass Variance

The mirror is set in zone eight upon leaving the factory. It will be necessary to adjust the compass to compensate for compass variance if you live outside of zone eight. Under certain circumstances, as during a long distance cross-country trip, it will be necessary to adjust for compass variance. Compass variance is the difference between earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If not adjusted to account for compass variance, your compass could give false readings.

To adjust for compass variance do the following:

1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the following zone map.



- 
2. Press and hold the on/off button until a Z and a zone number appears in the display. The compass is now in zone mode.
3. Keep pressing the on/off button until the desired zone number appears in the display. Release the button. After approximately four seconds of inactivity, the new zone number will be locked in and the compass/temperature display will return.
4. Calibrate the compass as described below.

## Compass Calibration

The compass may need calibration if one of the following occurs:

- After approximately five seconds, the display does not show a compass heading (N for North, for example), there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic antenna mount, magnetic note pad holder or a similar magnetic item.
- The compass does not display the correct heading and the compass zone variance is set correctly.

In order to calibrate, CAL must be displayed in the mirror compass windows. If CAL is not displayed, push the on/off button for approximately 12 seconds or until CAL is displayed.

The compass can be calibrated by driving the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less until the display reads a direction.

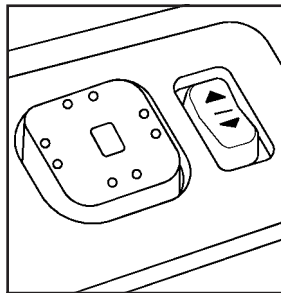
## Passenger Air Bag Indicator

Your vehicle may be equipped with a passenger airbag indicator, on the mirror glass, just above the buttons. For more information, see *Passenger Sensing System on page 73*.

## Cleaning the Mirror

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

## Outside Power Mirrors



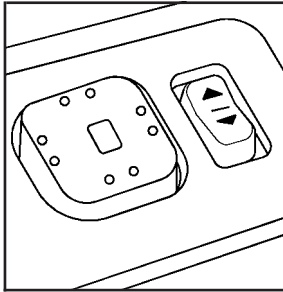
If your vehicle is equipped with outside power mirrors, the controls are located on the driver's door armrest.

Move the selector switch located above the control pad to the left or right to choose the mirror you want to adjust, then press the dots located on the four-way control pad to adjust the mirror.

The mirrors include ground illumination lamps in the base of the mirror. For more information on these lamps, see *Puddle Lamps on page 155*.

The mirrors also include a memory function which works in conjunction with the memory seats. See *Memory Seat and Mirrors on page 10*.

## Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors



If your vehicle is equipped with this feature, the controls are located on the driver's door armrest.

Move the upper selector switch to the left or right to choose the mirror you want to adjust; then press the dots located on the four-way control pad to adjust the mirror.

The mirrors may also include a memory function which works together with the memory seats. See *Memory Seat and Mirrors* on page 10 for more information.

To fold or unfold the mirrors, move the selector switch, located above the mirror control, to the middle position. The mirror control will illuminate. Press the right or left side of the mirror control to fold or unfold the mirrors. You may notice the mirror glass adjust as the mirrors fold in; this is normal. The mirror glass will reposition itself once the mirrors are unfolded.

If the mirrors are accidentally folded/unfolded manually, they may shake or flutter at normal driving speeds and may not stay in the unfolded position. If this happens, you will need to reset the mirrors. See "Resetting the Power Foldaway Mirrors" next.

## Resetting the Power Foldaway Mirrors

You will need to reset the power foldaway mirrors if the following occurs:

- They are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors will not stay in the unfolded position.
- The mirrors shake and flutter at normal driving speeds.

To reset the power foldaway mirrors, fold and unfold them at least three times using the mirror controls. This will reset them to their normal position.

## Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror

The driver's outside mirror will adjust for the glare of any headlamps behind you. This feature is controlled by the on and off settings on the electrochromic mirror. See "Automatic Dimming Mirror Operation" under *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar<sup>®</sup>, Compass and Temperature Display* on page 115.

## Outside Curb View Assist Mirrors

If the vehicle has the memory package, the outside mirrors are able to perform the curb view assist mirror function. This feature will cause the passenger's and/or driver's mirror to tilt to a preselected position when the vehicle is in REVERSE (R). This feature may be useful in allowing the driver to view the curb when parallel parking. When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (R) and a short delay has occurred, the passenger's and/or driver's mirror will return to its original position.

To change the preselected tilt position, adjust the mirrors to the desired position while the vehicle is in REVERSE (R). When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (R), this new position is saved in memory as the tilt position.

This feature can be turned on or off through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 186* for more information.



## Outside Convex Mirror

 **CAUTION:**

**A convex mirror can make things (like other vehicles) look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on your right. Check your inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.**

Your passenger's side mirror is convex. A convex mirror's surface is curved so you can see more from the driver's seat.

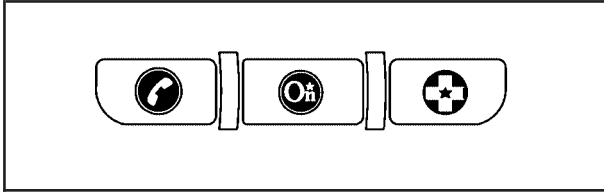
## Outside Heated Mirrors

The vehicle may have outside heated mirrors which helps clear them of condensation, snow, and ice.

The mirror heat is controlled by pressing the outside mirror button, if the vehicle has a sliding rear window, or the rear window defogger button. See "Rear Window Defogger" under *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* on page 160 for further information.

The mirror heat will turn off about 10 minutes after the button is pressed. Press the button again if additional warming time is needed.

# OnStar® System



OnStar® uses several innovative technologies and live advisors to provide you with a wide range of safety, security, information, and convenience services. If your airbags deploy, the system is designed to make an automatic call to OnStar® Emergency where we can request emergency services be sent to your location. If you lock your keys in the vehicle, call OnStar® at 1-888-4-ONSTAR and they can send a signal to unlock your doors. If you need roadside assistance, press the OnStar® button and they can contact Roadside Service for you.

A complete OnStar® Owner's Guide and the Terms and Conditions of the OnStar® Subscription Service Agreement are included in the vehicle's OnStar® Subscriber Information packet located in your vehicle. For more information, visit [www.onstar.com](http://www.onstar.com) or [www.onstar.ca](http://www.onstar.ca), contact OnStar® at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827), or press the OnStar® button to speak with an OnStar® advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

## OnStar® Services

For new vehicles equipped with OnStar®, the Safe & Sound Plan is included for one year from the date of purchase. You can extend this plan beyond the first year, or upgrade to the Directions & Connections Plan to meet your needs. For more information, press the OnStar® button to speak with an advisor.

## Safe & Sound Plan

- Advanced Automatic Crash Notification
- Automatic Notification of Airbag Deployment
- Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance
- Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance
- AccidentAssist
- Remote Door Unlock/Vehicle Alert
- OnStar® Vehicle Diagnostics
- OnStar® Hands-Free Calling
- OnStar® Virtual Advisor

## Directions & Connections® Plan

- All Safe & Sound Plan Services
- Driving Directions
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

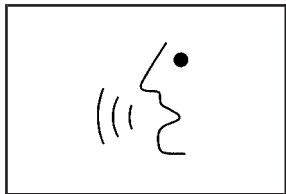
## OnStar® Hands-Free Calling

OnStar® Hands-Free Calling allows OnStar® subscribers to make and receive calls using voice commands at the touch of a button. Hands-Free Calling is fully integrated into the vehicle, and may be used with Pre-Paid Minute Packages or linked to a cell phone through OnStar® Shared Minutes Plan. To find out more, refer to the OnStar® Owner's Guide, visit [www.onstar.com](http://www.onstar.com) or [www.onstar.ca](http://www.onstar.ca), or speak with an OnStar® advisor by pressing the OnStar® button or calling 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

## OnStar® Virtual Advisor

Your vehicle may have Virtual Advisor. It is a feature of OnStar® Hands-Free Calling that uses your minutes to access weather, local traffic reports and stock quotes. By pressing the phone button and giving a few simple voice commands, you can browse through the various topics. Customize your information profile at [www.myonstar.com](http://www.myonstar.com). See the OnStar® Owner's guide for more information.

## OnStar® Steering Wheel Controls



Your vehicle may be equipped with a Talk/Mute button that can be used to interact with OnStar®.

See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 245* for more information.

When calling into voice mail systems or to dial directory numbers, press this button once, wait for the response, say the number(s) to be dialed, wait for the number(s) to be repeated and then say “dial.”

See the OnStar® Owner’s guide for more information.

## Universal Home Remote System

### Universal Home Remote System (With Three Round LED)

The Universal Home Remote System provides a way to replace up to three hand-held Radio-Frequency (RF) transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home lighting.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Grant of Equipment Authorization Certificate number is KOBGTE05A.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The Canadian Registration ID number is 3521A-GTE05A.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

## **Universal Home Remote System (With One Triangular LED)**

The Universal Home Remote System provides a way to replace up to three hand-held Radio-Frequency (RF) transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home lighting.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Grant of Equipment Authorization Certificate number is CB2OHHL3.

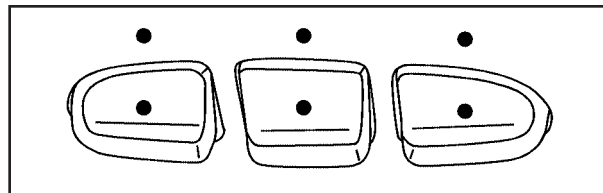
This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The Canadian Registration ID number is 2791032007A.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

## Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED)



Your vehicle may have the Universal Home Remote System. If there are three round Light Emitting Diode (LED) above the Universal Home Remote System buttons, follow the instructions below. If there is one triangular LED above the Universal Home Remote System buttons, follow the instructions under Universal Home Remote System Operation (with one triangular LED).

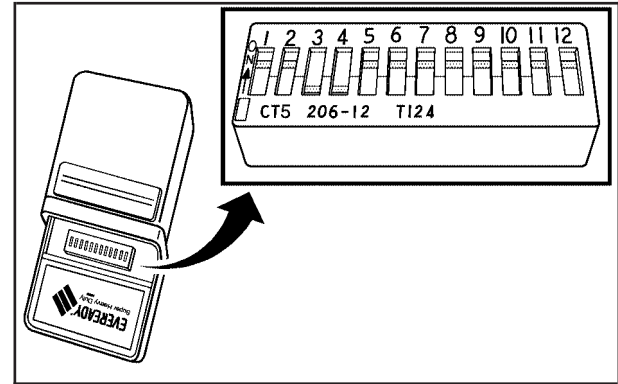
This system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home lighting.

Do not use this system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the transmitter. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you in programming the transmitter.

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles, as well as, for future programming. You only need the original remote control transmitter for fixed code programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale or lease termination of the vehicle, the programmed buttons should be erased for security purposes. See “Erasing your Universal Home Remote Buttons” later in this section.

Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or security device you are programming. When programming a garage door, it is advised to park outside of the garage.



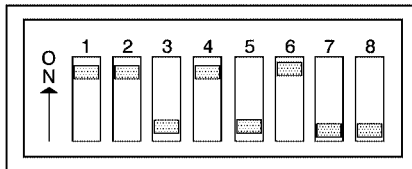
If you do not know if your garage door opener is a fixed code or rolling code device, open your garage door opener's remote control battery cover. Your garage door opener is a fixed code device if there is a panel of switches. If not, your garage door opener is a rolling code device.

## Programming Universal Home Remote — Fixed Code

Fixed Code garage door openers are used for garage doors produced prior to 1996. Fixed code uses the same coded signal every time, which is manually programmed by setting DIP switches for a unique personal code.

Follow these steps to program up to three channels:

1. Remove the battery cover of the hand-held transmitter.



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Off	On	Off	On	Off	Off

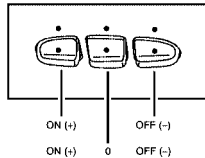
### Example of Switch Settings

2. Write down the eight to 12 coding switch settings from left to right. When the switch is in the up position, write “on,” and when a switch is in the down position, write “off”. If a switch is set between the up and down position, write “middle”.
3. Enter these positions into the Universal Home Remote System as follows.

Press and release all three buttons at the same time to put the device into programming mode.



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Off	On	Off	On	Off	Off
Your UHR Button	Left	Left	Right	Left	Right	Left	Right	Right



### Example

- The indicator light will blink slowly. In order from left to right, and within two and one-half minutes, enter each switch setting into the Universal Home Remote System. Push one button for each switch as follows:
  - Left button = “on” switch position.
  - Right button = “off” switch position.
  - Middle button = “middle” switch position.

- After entering the switch settings, press and release all three buttons at the same time. The indicator lights will turn on.
- Press and hold the button you would like to use to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light above the selected button should slowly blink. You may need to hold the button from five to 55 seconds.
- Immediately release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
- Press and release the button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home lighting, repeat Steps 1 through 8, choosing a different function button in Step 7 than what you used for the garage door opener.

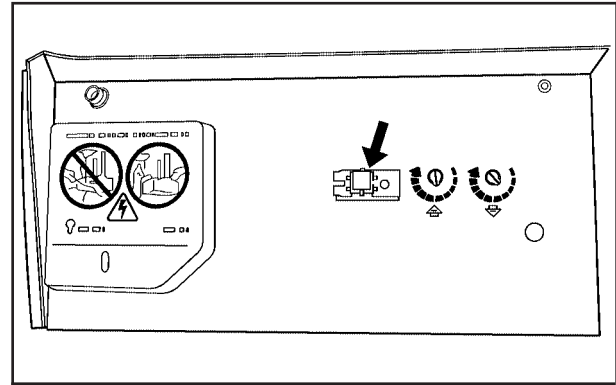
## Programming Universal Home Remote — Rolling Code

Rolling code garage door openers are used for garage doors produced after 1996 and are code protected. Rolling code means the coded signal is changed every time your remote control garage door opener is used.

Programming a rolling code garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before you begin. If you do not follow these actions, the device will time out and you will have to repeat the procedure.

Follow these steps to program up to three channels:

1. Press the two outside buttons at the same time for one to two seconds, and immediately release them.



2. Go to the garage. Locate the garage door motor head and press and release the “learn” button.

After pressing the “learn” button, you have 10 to 30 seconds to complete Step 4 depending on your garage control unit. If you cannot locate the “learn” button, refer to the owners guide for your garage door opener.

3. Press and hold the button you would like to use to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light, above the selected button, should slowly blink. You may need to hold the button from five to 20 seconds.
4. Immediately release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
5. Press and release the button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home lighting, repeat Steps 1 through 6, choosing a different function button in Step 4 than what you used for the garage door opener.

## **Using Universal Home Remote**

Press and hold the appropriate button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

## **Reprogramming Universal Home Remote Buttons**

You can reprogram any of the three buttons by repeating the instructions.

## **Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons**

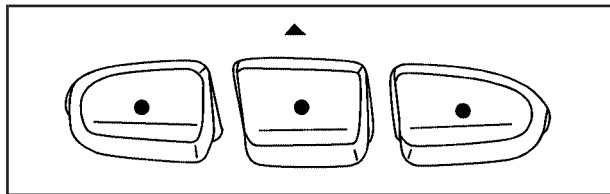
You should erase the programmed buttons when you sell the vehicle or terminate your lease.

To erase either rolling code or fixed code on the Universal Home Remote device, do the following:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons at the same time for approximately 20 seconds, until the indicator lights, located directly above the buttons, begin to blink rapidly.
2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release both buttons. The codes from all button will be erased.

For additional information on Universal Home Remote, see *Customer Assistance Offices on page 472*.

## Universal Home Remote System Operation (With One Triangular LED)



Your vehicle may have the Universal Home Remote System. If there is one triangular Light Emitting Diode (LED) above the Universal Home Remote buttons, follow the instructions below. If your vehicle has three round LED above the Universal Home Remote buttons, follow the instructions under Universal Home Remote System Operation (with three round LED).

Do not use the Universal Home Remote with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982. If you have a newer garage door opener with rolling

codes, please be sure to follow Steps 6 through 8 to complete the programming of your Universal Home Remote Transmitter.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Universal Home Remote. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you in the programming steps.

Keep the original hand-held transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future Universal Home Remote programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed Universal Home Remote buttons should be erased for security purposes. See “Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons” later in this section or, for assistance, see *Customer Assistance Offices on page 472*.

Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate operator you are programming. When programming a garage door, it is advised to park outside of the garage.

It is recommended that a new battery be installed in your hand-held transmitter for quicker and more accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

## Programming Universal Home Remote

Follow these steps to program up to three channels:

1. Press and hold down the two outside Universal Home Remote buttons, releasing only when the Universal Home Remote indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds. Do not hold down the buttons for longer than 30 seconds and do not repeat this step to program a second and/or third hand-held transmitter to the remaining two Universal Home Remote buttons.
2. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter about 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the Universal Home Remote buttons while keeping the indicator light in view.
3. Simultaneously press and hold both the desired Universal Home Remote button and the hand-held transmitter button. Do not release the buttons until Step 4 has been completed.

Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to substitute Step 3 with the procedure noted in “Gate Operator and Canadian Programming” later in this section.

4. The indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly after Universal Home Remote successfully receives the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons.
5. Press and hold the newly-trained Universal Home Remote button and observe the indicator light.

If the indicator light stays on continuously, programming is complete and your device should activate when the Universal Home Remote button is pressed and released.

To program the remaining two Universal Home Remote buttons, begin with Step 2 under “Programming Universal Home Remote.” Do not repeat Step 1 as this will erase all of the programmed channels.

If the indicator light blinks rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light, continue with Steps 6 through 8 following to complete the programming of a rolling-code device, most commonly, a garage door opener.

6. Locate in the garage, the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). Locate the “Learn” or “Smart” button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit.
7. Firmly press and release the “Learn” or “Smart” button. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.

You will have 30 seconds to start Step 8.

8. Return to the vehicle. Firmly press and hold the programmed Universal Home Remote button for two seconds, then release. Repeat the press/hold/release sequence a second time, and depending on the brand of the garage door opener or other rolling code device, repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

The Universal Home Remote should now activate the rolling-code device.

To program the remaining two Universal Home Remote buttons, begin with Step 2 of “Programming Universal Home Remote.” Do not repeat Step 1, as this will erase all previous programming from the Universal Home Remote buttons.

## **Gate Operator and Canadian Programming**

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out or quit after several seconds of transmission. This may not be long enough for Universal Home Remote to pick up the signal during programming. Similarly, some U.S. gate operators are manufactured to time out in the same manner.

If you live in Canada, or you are having difficulty programming a gate operator or garage door opener by using the “Programming Universal Home Remote” procedures, regardless of where you live, replace Step 3 under “Programming Universal Home Remote” with the following:

Continue to press and hold the Universal Home Remote button while you press and release every two seconds (cycle) the hand-held transmitter button until the frequency signal has been successfully accepted by the Universal Home Remote. The Universal Home Remote indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly. Proceed with Step 4 under “Programming Universal Home Remote” to complete.

## Using Universal Home Remote

Press and hold the appropriate Universal Home Remote button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

## Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons

To erase programming from the three Universal Home Remote buttons do the following:

1. Press and hold down the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds. Do not hold the two outside buttons for longer than 30 seconds.
2. Release both buttons.

The Universal Home Remote is now in the training (learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 2 under “Programming Universal Home Remote” shown earlier in this section.

Individual buttons cannot be erased, but they can be reprogrammed. See “Reprogramming a Single Universal Home Remote Button” following this section.

## Reprogramming a Single Universal Home Remote Button

To program a device to Universal Home Remote using a Universal Home Remote button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired Universal Home Remote button. Do not release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. While still holding the Universal Home Remote button, proceed with Step 2 under “Programming Universal Home Remote” shown earlier in this section.

For additional information on Universal Home Remote, see *Customer Assistance Offices on page 472*.

## Storage Areas

### Glove Box

To open your glove box, pull the lever upward and pull the door downward.

### Cupholder(s)

Your vehicle may be equipped with cupholders for the front and rear seat passengers, located in the center console and on the rear of the center console storage area. To use the front cupholders press down on the raised area of the access door. Close the door by pushing it all the way down until it locks back into place. To access the rear cupholders, pull down on the door located on the back of the console.

The front cupholder may be removed for cleaning by pushing down and then back on the cupholder.

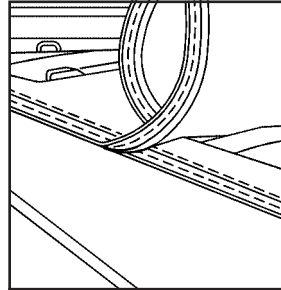
## Center Console Storage Area

Your vehicle may be equipped with a console compartment between the bucket seats.

To open it press the button on the side and swing the console lid open.

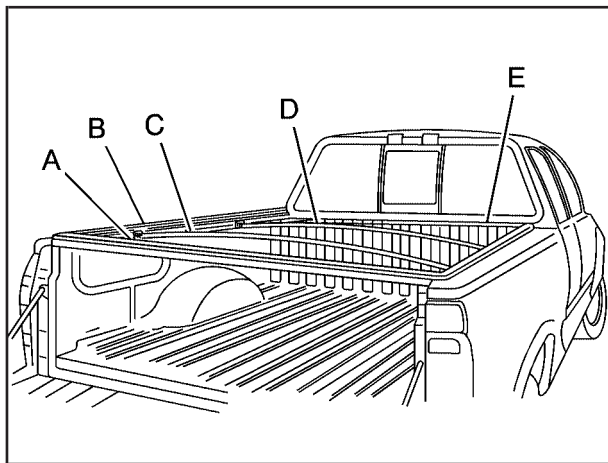
## Tonneau Cover

If your vehicle is equipped with a tonneau cover, follow the directions below to remove the cover.



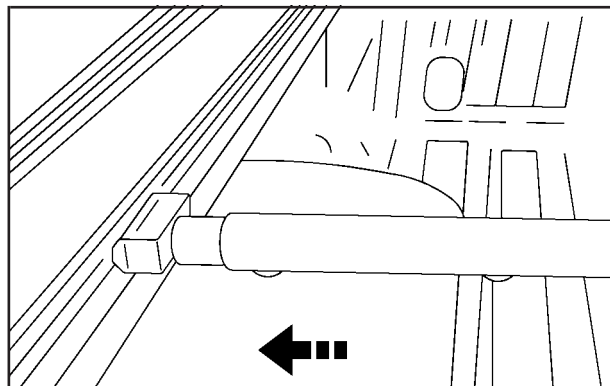
1. To remove, unsnap the cover. Roll it up and stow it using the buckle and the strap located at the front of the box.



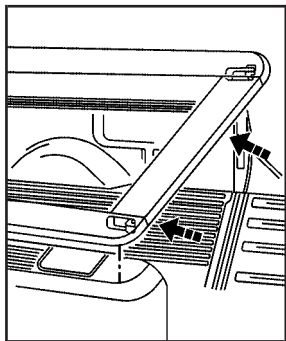


- A. Back rail
- B. Side rail
- C. Rear bow
- D. Front bow
- E. Front rail

2. Remove the tonneau cover from the notch in the front rail on the driver's side of the vehicle.



3. Remove the two bows by gently pushing them against the spring-loaded end. The two bows are labeled front and rear to remind you of the order in which to reinstall them.

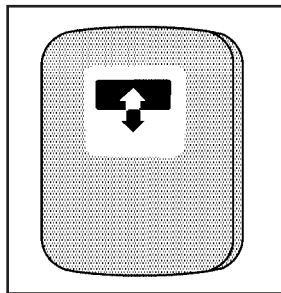


4. To add cargo to the box, remove all bows and the back rail and stow them safely.

To clean the tonneau cover, use mild soap and water. If necessary, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt trapped in the grain of the material.

## Sunroof

The vehicle may have a power sliding sunroof. To open or close the sunroof, the ignition must be on or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* on page 101 for more information.



The sunroof control is located on the overhead console. Press the rear of the control to open the sunroof to the vent position, then press the rear of the control again to express-open the sunroof.

To close the sunroof, press and hold the front of the control. The control must be held until the glass stops moving, so that the sunroof will be fully seated.

The sunroof also has a roller sunscreen that can be used to block the rays of the sun. The roller sunscreen can be manually operated with the sunroof in an open or closed position. To open the sunscreen, press up to unlatch it and roll it back. To close, pull it forward and latch it to the close position.

If the battery has been recharged, disconnected, or not working, the sunroof may need to be reprogrammed. To do this, start the vehicle and press forward on the sunroof control until it moves to a fully closed position. This resets the sunroof memory, enabling the sunroof to function properly.

## Section 3 Instrument Panel

---

<b>Instrument Panel Overview</b> .....	142	Exit Lighting .....	157
Hazard Warning Flashers .....	144	Front Reading Lamps .....	157
Other Warning Devices .....	144	Cargo Lamp .....	158
Horn .....	144	Battery Run-Down Protection .....	158
Tilt Wheel .....	144	Accessory Power Outlet(s) .....	158
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever .....	145	Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter .....	159
Turn and Lane-Change Signals .....	146	<b>Climate Controls</b> .....	160
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer .....	147	Dual Automatic Climate Control System ...	160
Flash-to-Pass .....	147	Outlet Adjustment .....	167
Windshield Wipers .....	147	<b>Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators</b> ....	168
Windshield Washer .....	148	Instrument Panel Cluster .....	169
Cruise Control .....	149	Speedometer and Odometer .....	170
Headlamps .....	152	Trip Odometer .....	170
Headlamps on Reminder .....	153	Tachometer .....	170
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) .....	153	Safety Belt Reminder Light .....	171
Automatic Headlamp System .....	154	Airbag Readiness Light .....	171
Puddle Lamps .....	155	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator .....	172
Fog Lamps .....	155	Battery Warning Light .....	174
Instrument Panel Brightness .....	156	Voltmeter Gage .....	175
Dome Lamps .....	156	Brake System Warning Light .....	176
Dome Lamp Override .....	157	Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light .....	177
Entry Lighting .....	157		

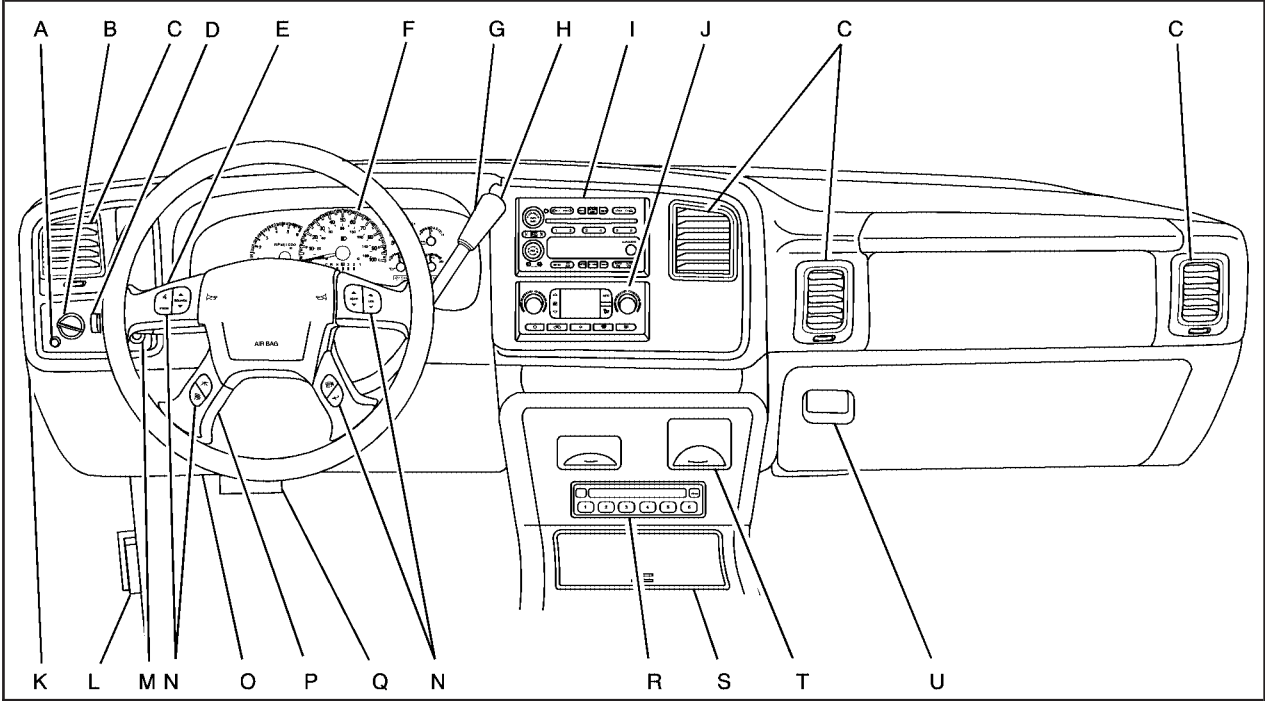
## Section 3 Instrument Panel

---

Engine Coolant Temperature Gage .....	178	<b>Audio System(s)</b> .....	206
Transmission Temperature Gage .....	178	Setting the Time .....	208
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	180	Radio with Cassette and CD .....	208
Oil Pressure Gage .....	183	Navigation/Radio System .....	225
Security Light .....	183	Rear Seat Entertainment System .....	225
Cruise Control Light .....	184	Rear Seat Audio (RSA) .....	239
Highbeam On Light .....	184	CD Changer .....	241
Tow/Haul Mode Light .....	184	Theft-Deterrent Feature .....	245
Cargo Lamp Light .....	184	Audio Steering Wheel Controls .....	245
Fuel Gage .....	185	Radio Reception .....	246
Low Fuel Warning Light .....	185	Care of the Cassette Tape Player .....	247
<b>Driver Information Center (DIC)</b> .....	186	Care of Your CDs and DVDs .....	249
DIC Operation and Displays .....	186	Care of the CD and DVD Player .....	249
DIC Warnings and Messages .....	190	Fixed Mast Antenna .....	249
DIC Vehicle Customization .....	199	XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System .....	250
		Chime Level Adjustment .....	250



# Instrument Panel Overview

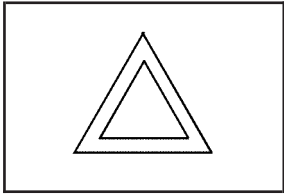


The main components of your instrument panel are the following:

- A. Dome Lamp Override Button. See *Dome Lamp Override on page 157*.
- B. Headlamp Control. See *Headlamps on page 152*.
- C. Air Outlets. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 160*.
- D. Instrument Panel Brightness Control. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 156*.
- E. Multifunction Lever. See *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 145*.
- F. Instrument Panel Cluster. See *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 169*.
- G. Gearshift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 105*.
- H. Tow/Haul Selector Switch. See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 108*.
- I. Audio System. See *Audio System(s) on page 206*.
- J. Climate Control System. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 160*.
- K. Instrument Panel Fuse Block. See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 436*.
- L. Hood Release. See *Hood Release on page 333*.
- M. Fog Lamps Button. See *Fog Lamps on page 155*.
- N. Audio Steering Wheel Controls and Driver Information Controls. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 245* and *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 186*.
- O. Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block. See *Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 438*.
- P. Tilt Lever. See *Tilt Wheel on page 144*.
- Q. Parking Brake Release. See *Parking Brake on page 109*.
- R. Compact Disc Changer. See *CD Changer on page 241*.
- S. Accessory Power Outlet. See *Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter on page 159*.
- T. Ashtray. See *Accessory Power Outlet(s) on page 158*.
- U. Glovebox. See *Glove Box on page 136*.

## Hazard Warning Flashers

The hazard warning flashers warn others. They also let police know you have a problem. Your front and rear turn signal lamps will flash on and off.



The hazard warning flasher button is located on top of the steering column.

The hazard warning flashers work no matter what ignition position the key is in, and even if the key is not in the ignition.

Press the button to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press the button again to turn the flashers off.

When the hazard warning flashers are on, your turn signals will not work.

## Other Warning Devices

If you carry reflective triangles, you can set them up at the side of the road about 300 feet (100 m) behind your vehicle.

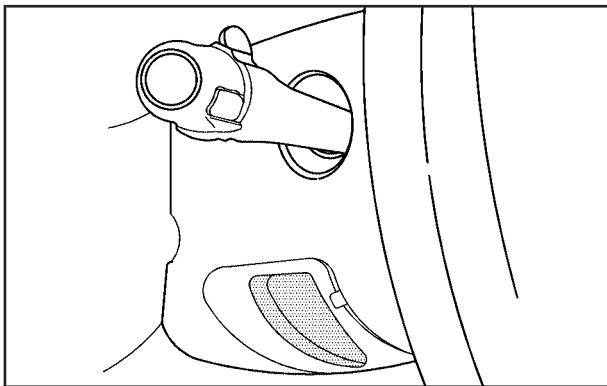
### Horn

To sound the horn, press the center pad on the steering wheel.

### Tilt Wheel

The tilt wheel will allow you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. Raise it to the highest level to give your legs more room when you exit and enter your vehicle.

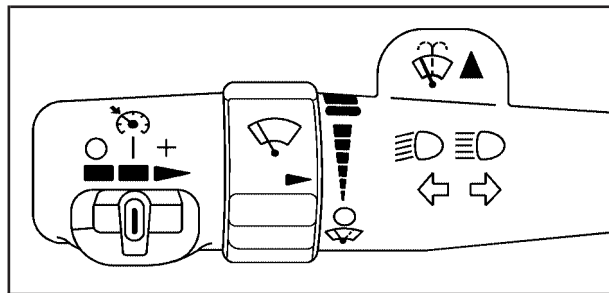







The tilt steering wheel lever is located on the lower left side of the column.



To tilt the wheel, hold the steering wheel and pull the lever. Then move the steering wheel to a comfortable position and release the lever to lock the wheel in place.

## Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever



The lever on the left side of the steering column includes the following:

-  Turn and Lane Change Signals. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* on page 146.
-  Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer. See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* on page 147.
- Flash-to-Pass. See *Flash-to-Pass* on page 147.
-  Windshield Wipers. See *Windshield Wipers* on page 147.

-  Windshield Washer. See *Windshield Washer* on page 148.
-  Cruise Control. See *Cruise Control* on page 149.

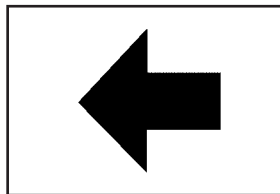
For information on the headlamps, see *Headlamps* on page 152.

## Turn and Lane-Change Signals

The turn signal has two upward (for right) and two downward (for left) positions. These positions allow you to signal a turn or a lane change.

To signal a turn, move the lever all the way up or down. When the turn is finished, the lever will return automatically.

To signal a lane change, just raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash. Hold it there until you complete your lane change. The lever will return by itself when you release it.



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

As you signal a turn or a lane change, if the arrows flash more quickly than normal, a signal bulb may be burned out and other drivers won't see your turn signal.

If a bulb is burned out, replace it to help avoid an accident. If the arrows don't go on at all when you signal a turn, check for burned-out bulbs and a blown fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers* on page 436.

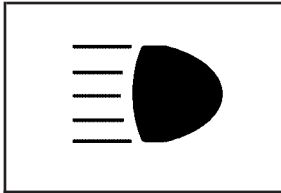
### Turn Signal On Chime

If your turn signal is left on for more than 3/4 of a mile (1.2 km), a chime will sound at each flash of the turn signal and the message TURN SIGNAL ON will also appear in the DIC. To turn the chime and message off, move the turn signal lever to the off position.

## Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

### (Headlamp High/Low Beam Changer):

To change the headlamps from low to high beam, push the lever toward the instrument panel. To return to low-beam headlamps, pull the multifunction lever toward you. Then release it.



When the high beams are on, this indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will also be on.

## Flash-to-Pass


This feature lets you use your high-beam headlamps to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass. It works even if your headlamps are in the automatic position.


To use it, pull the turn signal lever toward you, then release it.


If your headlamps are in the automatic position or on low beam, your high-beam headlamps will turn on. They'll stay on as long as you hold the lever toward you. The high-beam indicator on the instrument panel cluster will come on. Release the lever to return to normal operation.


## Windshield Wipers


You control the windshield wipers by turning the band with the wiper symbol on it.

 (**Mist**): For a single wiping cycle, turn the band to mist. Hold it there until the wipers start. Then let go. The wipers will stop after one wipe. If you want more wipes, hold the band on mist longer.

 (**Delay**): You can set the wiper speed for a long or short delay between wipes. This can be very useful in light rain or snow. Turn the band to choose the delay time. The closer to the top of the lever, the shorter the delay.


 **(Low Speed):** For steady wiping at low speed, turn the band away from you to the first solid band past the delay settings. For high-speed wiping, turn the band further, to the second solid band past the delay settings. To stop the wipers, move the band to off.

 **(High Speed):** For high-speed wiping, turn the band further, to the second solid band past the delay settings.

 **(Off):** To stop the wipers, move the band to off.

Be sure to clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they're frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. If your blades do become worn or damaged, get new blades or blade inserts.

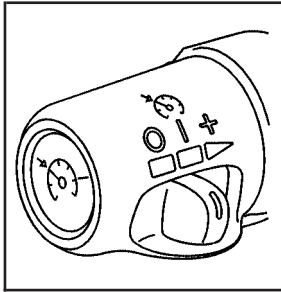
## Windshield Washer

 **(Washer Fluid):** There is a paddle marked with the windshield washer symbol at the top of the multifunction lever. To spray washer fluid on the windshield, push the paddle. The wipers will clear the window and then either stop or return to your preset speed.

### **CAUTION:**

**In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.**


## Cruise Control



○ **(Off):** This position turns the system off.

| **(On):** This position activates the system.

+ **(Resume/Accelerate):** Push the lever to this symbol to make the vehicle accelerate or resume to a previously set speed.

 **(Set):** Press this button to set the speed.

With cruise control, you can maintain a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. This can really help on long trips. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h).

If you apply your brakes, the cruise control will shut off.

### **CAUTION:**

**Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.**

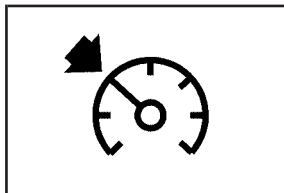
**Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.**

## Setting Cruise Control

### CAUTION:

**If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.**

1. Move the cruise control switch to on.
2. Get up to the speed you want.
3. Press in the set button at the end of the lever and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



The cruise symbol on the instrument panel will illuminate when the cruise control is engaged.

## Resuming a Set Speed

Suppose you set your cruise control at a desired speed and then you apply the brake. This, of course, disengages the cruise control. But you don't need to reset it.

Once you're going about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, you can move the cruise control switch briefly from on to resume/accelerate.

You'll go right back up to your chosen speed and stay there.

If you hold the switch at resume/accelerate the vehicle will keep going faster until you release the switch or apply the brake. So unless you want to go faster, don't hold the switch at resume/accelerate.

## **Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control**

There are two ways to go to a higher speed:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the higher speed. Press the set button at the end of the lever, then release the button and the accelerator pedal. You'll now cruise at the higher speed. If the accelerator pedal is held longer than 60 seconds, cruise control will turn off.
- Move the cruise switch from on to resume/accelerate. Hold it there until you get up to the speed you want, and then release the switch. To increase your speed in very small amounts, move the switch briefly to resume/accelerate. Each time you do this, your vehicle will go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

## **Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control**

- Press in the button at the end of the lever until you reach the lower speed you want, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, briefly press the set button. Each time you do this, you'll go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

## **Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control**

Use the accelerator pedal to increase your speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, your vehicle will slow down to the cruise control speed you set earlier.

## Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well your cruise control will work on hills depends upon your speed, load and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you may want to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed. When going downhill, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down. Of course, applying the brake takes you out of cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and don't use cruise control on steep hills.

## Ending Cruise Control

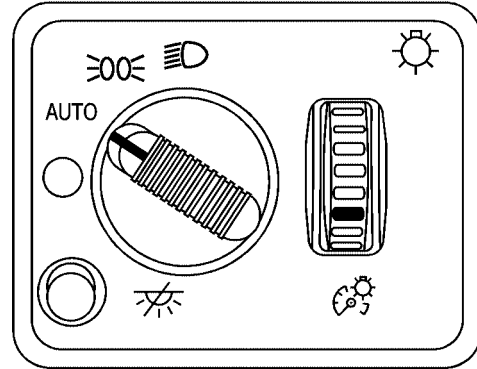
There are four ways to turn off the cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal,
- move the cruise control switch to off, or
- shift the transmission to NEUTRAL (N).
- If the accelerator pedal is held for 60 seconds or longer, cruise control will turn off.

## Erasing Speed Memory

When you turn off the cruise control or the ignition, your cruise control set speed memory is erased.

## Headlamps



The control on the driver's side of the instrument panel operates the exterior lamps.

Turn the control clockwise to operate the lamps.



The exterior lamp control has four positions:

○ **(OFF):** Turning the control to this position turns off the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL), and the automatic headlamps.

**AUTO (Automatic):** Turning the control to this position puts the system into automatic headlamp mode.

☞ **(Parking Lamps):** Turning the control to this position turns on the parking lamps, together with the following:

- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights
- Roof Marker Lamps (If Equipped)

☞ **(Headlamps):** Turning the control to this position turns on the headlamps, together with the previously listed lamps and lights.

You can switch your headlamps from high to low-beam by pushing the turn signal/multifunction lever towards the instrument panel.

## Headlamps on Reminder

A reminder chime will sound when your headlamps or parking lamps are manually turned on and your ignition is off, in LOCK, ACCESSORY, or your door is open. To disable the chime, turn the light off, then back on.

## Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system will come on when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on,
- the exterior lamp control is in AUTO
- the automatic transmission is not in PARK (P), and
- the light sensor determines it is daytime.

When the DRL are on, only your DRL lamps will be on. The taillamps, sidemarker and other lamps won't be on. The instrument panel won't be lit up either.

When it begins to get dark, the automatic headlamp system will switch from DRL to the headlamps or the last chosen headlamp setting that was used.

When you turn the exterior lamp control to off, the headlamps will go off, and your DRL lamps will illuminate, provided it is not dark outside.

Shifting the transmission into PARK (P) will allow you to idle the vehicle with the DRL off. The DRL will stay off until you release the parking brake or shift the transmission out of PARK (P).

## **Automatic Headlamp System**

When it is dark enough outside, the automatic headlamp system will turn on the headlamps at the normal brightness, along with the taillamps, sidemarker, parking lamps, and the instrument panel lights. The radio back lighting will also be dimly lit.

To turn off the automatic headlamp system, turn the exterior lamps switch to the off position. Turning off the automatic headlamp system with the headlamp switch is not available for vehicles first sold in Canada.

Your vehicle has a light sensor located on the top of the instrument panel in the defroster grille that regulates when the automatic headlamps turn on. Be sure it is not covered, or the headlamps will come on whenever the ignition is on.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage, heavy overcast weather, or a tunnel. This is normal.

There is a delay in the transition between the daytime and nighttime operation of the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) and the automatic headlamp systems so that driving under bridges or bright overhead street lights does not affect the system. The DRL and automatic headlamp system will only be affected when the light sensor detects a change in lighting lasting longer than the delay.

If you start your vehicle in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system will come on immediately. Once you leave the garage, it will take approximately one minute for the automatic headlamp system to change to DRL if it is bright enough outside. During that delay, your instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure your instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 156*.

To idle your vehicle with the automatic headlamp system off, turn the control to the off position.

You may be able to turn off your Automatic Headlamp System. See *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) on page 153* for more information.

Your headlamps will also stay on after you exit the vehicle. You can program this feature using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 199*.

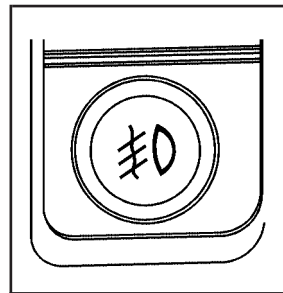
As with any vehicle, you should turn on the regular headlamp system when needed.

## Puddle Lamps

Your vehicle is equipped with puddle lamps to help you see the area near the base of the front doors when it is dark out. The puddle lamps will illuminate when a door is opened or when you press the unlock button on the keyless entry transmitter.

## Fog Lamps

You can use your vehicle's fog lamps for better vision in foggy or misty conditions.



The fog lamp button is located on the left side of your instrument panel.

Your parking lamps and/or low-beam headlamps must be on for your fog lamps to work.

Press the button to turn the fog lamps on while the headlamps are on. Press the button again to turn them off. An indicator light will glow in the button when the fog lamps are on.


Remember, fog lamps alone will not give off as much light as your headlamps. Never use the fog lamps in the dark without turning on the headlamps.

The fog lamps will go off whenever the high-beam headlamps come on. When the high beams go off, the fog lamps will come on again.

The fog lamps will be cancelled after the ignition is turned off. If you still want to use the fog lamps after you restart the vehicle, press the fog lamp button again.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

## Instrument Panel Brightness

 **(Instrument Panel Brightness):** This feature controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights.

The thumbwheel for this feature is located next to the exterior lamp control.


Turn the thumbwheel up to adjust the instrument panel lights and return the radio display to full brightness when the headlamps or parking lamps are on. To turn on the dome lamps, with the vehicle doors closed, turn the thumbwheel all the way up.

## Dome Lamps

The dome lamps will come on when you open a door and the dome override button is in the out position.

You can also turn the dome lamps on by turning the instrument panel brightness thumbwheel, located next to the exterior lamps control, all the way up. In this position, the dome lamps will remain on whether the doors are opened or closed.

## Dome Lamp Override

 **(Dome Lamp Override):** You can use the dome override button, located below the exterior lamps control, to set the dome lamps to come on automatically when the doors are opened, or to remain off. To turn the lamps off, press the button to the in position. With the button in this position, the dome lamps will remain off when the doors are open. To return the lamps to automatic operation, press the button again and return the button to the out position. With the button in this position, the dome lamps will come on when you open a door.

## Entry Lighting

Your vehicle is equipped with an illuminated entry feature.

When a door is opened, the dome lamps and puddle lamps will come on if the dome override button is in the out position. If the dome override button is pressed in, the lamps will not come on.

## Exit Lighting

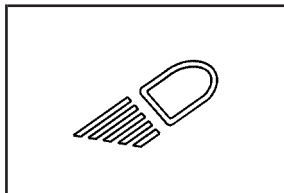
With exit lighting, the interior lamps will come on when you remove the key from the ignition. The lamps will not come on if the dome override button is pressed in.

## Front Reading Lamps

Your vehicle has front reading lamps located in the overhead console. Press the round button located next to the lamp to turn the lamp on. The lamps can be adjusted to point in the direction you want them to go.

Press the button again to turn the lamp off.

## Cargo Lamp



The cargo lamp button is located on the left side of the instrument panel. Press the button to turn the cargo lamp on or off.

An indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will come on when the cargo lamp is turned on, and the ignition key is turned to RUN.

## Battery Run-Down Protection

This feature shuts off the dome and reading lamps, if they are left on for more than 10 minutes when the ignition is turned off. The cargo lamp will shut off after 20 minutes. This will keep your battery from running down.

## Accessory Power Outlet(s)

Accessory power outlets can be used to connect auxiliary electrical equipment, such as a cellular telephone or CB radio. The outlet can accept electrical equipment up to a maximum of 20 amperes.

There are three accessory power outlets. The front outlet is located next to the floor console.

The second outlet is located in the center console. Press the button on the side of the console door to access the outlet. See *Center Console Storage Area on page 136* for more information.

There is also one accessory power outlet located on the rear of the center console.

To use an outlet, remove the protective cap. When not in use, always cover the outlet with the protective cap. The accessory power outlet is operational at all times.

**Notice:** If electrical devices are left plugged into a power outlet, the battery may drain causing your vehicle not to start or damage to the battery. This would not be covered by the warranty. Always unplug all electrical devices when turning off your vehicle.

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlets and could result in blown vehicle or adapter fuses. If you experience a problem, see your dealer for additional information on accessory power outlets.

**Notice:** Adding any electrical equipment to your vehicle may damage it or keep other components from working as they should. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not use equipment exceeding maximum amperage rating of 20 amperes. Check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment.

**Notice:** Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug because the power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only.

## Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter

The ashtray is located in the center console, if equipped. Press the raised area on the access door to use the ashtray.

To remove the ashtray first locate the indent on the right side of the ashtray. Then, place an instrument, such as a pen, in the indent and pry the ashtray out.

**Notice:** If you put papers, pins, or other flammable items in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage your vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.

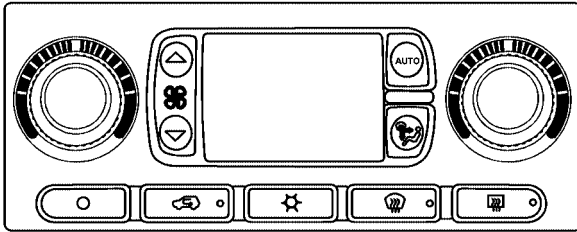
To use the cigarette lighter, push it in all the way, and let go. When it's ready, it will pop back out by itself.

**Notice:** Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating will not allow the lighter to back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating may occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.

# Climate Controls

## Dual Automatic Climate Control System

With this system, you can control the heating, cooling and ventilation in your vehicle.



You can select different climate control settings for the driver and passengers.

## Driver's Side Temperature Knob

The driver's side knob is used to adjust the temperature of the air coming through the system on the driver's side. The temperature can be adjusted even if the system is turned off. This is possible since outside air will always flow through the system as the vehicle is moving forward unless it is set to recirculation mode. See "Recirculation" later in this section.

Turn the knob counterclockwise or clockwise to lower or increase the cabin temperature. The display will show the temperature setting decreasing or increasing and an arrow pointing to the driver will be displayed under and to the left of the temperature setting.



## Passenger's Side Temperature Knob

The passenger's side knob can be used to change the temperature of the air coming through the system on the passenger's side of the vehicle. The temperature can be adjusted even if the system is turned off. This is possible since outside air will always flow through the system as the vehicle is moving forward unless it is set to recirculation mode. See "Recirculation" later in this section.

Turn the knob counterclockwise or clockwise to lower or increase the cabin temperature. The display will show the temperature setting decreasing or increasing and an arrow pointing to the passenger will be displayed under and to the right of the temperature setting.

The passenger's temperature setting can be set to match the driver's temperature setting by pressing and holding the AUTO button for four seconds. Both the driver and passenger arrows will be displayed.

## Automatic Operation

**AUTO (Automatic):** When automatic operation is active the system will control the inside temperature, the air delivery, and the fan speed.

Use the steps below to place the entire system in automatic mode:

1. Press the AUTO button.

When AUTO is selected, the display will change to show the current driver's set temperature, delivery mode and fan speed. Press the AUTO button again within five seconds to display the passenger's set temperature.

If the driver's and passenger's temperature settings are the same when AUTO is pressed, the temperature setting and both arrows will be displayed for five seconds along with the automatic air delivery mode and fan speed. After the five-second update, the display will change to show the temperature setting, both arrows and AUTO.

If the driver's and passenger's temperature settings are not the same, the opposite side temperature setting will be displayed for an additional five seconds. To make the passenger's temperature the same as the driver's press and hold the AUTO button for about four seconds.

When auto is selected, the air conditioning operation and air inlet will be automatically controlled. The air conditioning compressor will run when the outside temperature is over about 40°F (4°C). The air inlet will normally be set to outside air. If it's hot outside, the air inlet may automatically switch to recirculate inside air to help quickly cool down your vehicle. The light on the button will illuminate in recirculation.

2. Set the driver's and passenger's temperature.

To find your comfort setting, start with a 74°F (23°C) temperature setting and allow about 20 minutes for the system to regulate. Turn the driver's or passenger's side temperature knob to adjust the temperature setting as necessary. If you choose the temperature setting of 60°F (15°C) the system will remain at the maximum cooling setting. If you choose the temperature setting of 90°F (32°C) the system will remain at the maximum heat setting. Choosing either maximum setting will not cause the vehicle to heat or cool any faster.


Be careful not to cover the solar sensor located on the top of the instrument panel near the windshield. This sensor regulates air temperature based on sun load, and also turns on your headlamps. For more information on the solar sensor, see "Sensors" later in this section.

To avoid blowing cold air in cold weather, the system will delay turning on the fan until warm air is available. The length of delay depends on the engine coolant temperature. Pressing the fan switch will override this delay and change the fan to a selected speed.


○ **(Off):** Press this button to turn off the entire climate control system. Outside air will still enter the vehicle, and will be directed to the floor. This direction can be changed by pressing the mode button. The temperature can also be adjusted using either temperature knob. Press the up or down arrows on the fan switch, the defrost button, the AUTO button, or the air conditioning button to turn the system on when it is off.

## Manual Operation


You may manually adjust the air delivery mode or fan speed.


 **(Fan):** The switch with the fan symbol allows you to manually adjust the fan speed. Press the up arrow to increase fan speed and the down arrow to decrease fan speed.


Pressing this button when the system is off will turn the system on.


 **(Mode):** Press this button to manually change the direction of the airflow in your vehicle. Repeatedly press the button until the desired mode appears on the display.


If you press the mode button to select an air delivery mode, the display will change to show you the selected air mode delivery. The display will then show the current status of the system. When the system is turned off, the display will go blank after displaying the current status of the system.

 **(Panel):** This setting will deliver air to the instrument panel outlets.

 **(Bi-Level):** This setting will deliver warmer air to the floor and cooler air to the instrument panel outlets.

 **(Floor):** This setting will deliver air to the floor outlets.

 **(Defog):** See “Defogging and Defrosting” later in this section.


 **(Recirculation):** Press this button to limit the amount of outside air entering your vehicle. The light on the recirculation button will glow. This is helpful when you are trying to limit odors entering your vehicle and for maximum air conditioning performance in hot weather. Press this button again to allow outside air to enter the vehicle. The light on the recirculation button will go off.

Pressing this button also cancels the auto recirculation feature. To resume the auto recirculation function, press the AUTO button. Each time the vehicle is started, the system will revert to the auto recirculation function.

If you select recirculation while in defrost, defog or floor, the light in the button will flash and then go out to let you know that this is not allowed. This is normal and helps to prevent fogging.

When the weather is cool or damp, operating the system in recirculation for extended periods of time may cause fogging of the vehicle's windows. To clear the fog, select either defog or front defrost.

You may also notice that the A/C compressor will run while in recirculation mode. This is normal and helps to prevent fogging.

 **(Air Conditioning):** Press this button to turn the air conditioning (A/C) compressor on and off. The snowflake symbol will appear on the display when the A/C is on and will turn off when the air conditioning is off.

Pressing this button when the outside temperature is too cool for air conditioning to be effective will make the snowflake symbol flash three times and then turn off to let you know that the air conditioning mode is not available. If the air conditioning is on and the outside temperature drops below a temperature which is too cool for air conditioning to be effective, the snowflake symbol will turn off to let you know that the air conditioning mode has been canceled.

When air conditioning is selected or in AUTO mode, the system will run the air conditioning automatically to cool and dehumidify the air entering the vehicle. If you select A/C off while in front defrost, defog or recirculation, the A/C snowflake symbol will turn off, but the A/C compressor will still run to help prevent fogging.

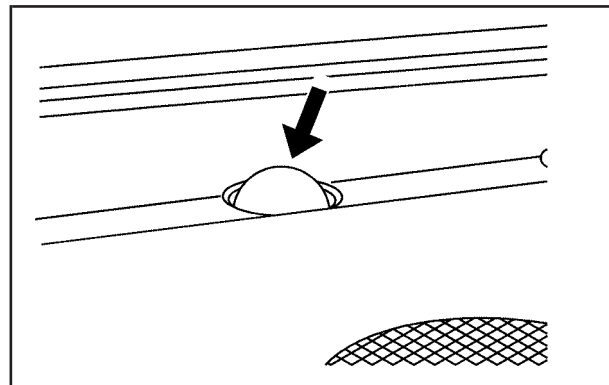
On hot days, open the windows long enough to let hot inside air escape. This reduces the time it takes for your vehicle to cool down. Then keep your windows closed for the air conditioner to work its best.

On cool, but sunny days while using manual operation of the automatic system, use bi-level to deliver warm air to the floor and cooler air to the instrument panel outlets. To warm or cool the air delivered, turn the temperature knob to the desired setting.

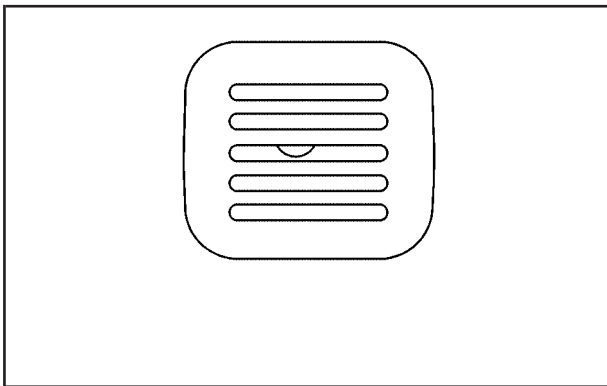
In AUTO mode the system will cool and dehumidify the air inside the vehicle. Also while in AUTO mode, the system will maximize its performance by using recirculation as necessary.

**(Off):** Press this button to turn off the entire climate control system. Outside air will still enter the vehicle, and will be directed to the floor. This direction can be changed by pressing the mode button. The temperature can also be adjusted using either temperature knob. Press the up or down arrows on the fan switch, the defrost button, the AUTO button, or the air conditioning button to turn the system on when it is off.

## Sensors



The solar sensor, located in the defrost grille, middle of the instrument panel, monitors the solar radiation. Do not cover the solar sensor or the system will not work properly.



There is also an interior temperature sensor located next to the steering wheel that measures the temperature of the air inside your vehicle.

There is also an exterior temperature sensor located behind the front grille. This sensor reads the outside air temperature and helps maintain the temperature inside the vehicle. Any cover on the front of the vehicle could cause a false reading in the displayed temperature.


In order to prevent false temperature readings at startup, the displayed temperature will not change until the following occurs:


- Vehicle speed is above 10 mph (16 kmh) for 5 minutes.
- Vehicle speed is above 32 mph (51 kmh) for 2 and a half minutes.

The climate control system uses the information from these sensors to maintain your comfort setting by adjusting the outlet temperature, fan speed, and the air delivery mode. The system may also supply cooler air to the side of the vehicle facing the sun. The recirculation mode will also be used as needed to maintain cool outlet temperatures.

## **Defogging and Defrosting**


You can use either defog or front defrost to clear fog or frost from your windshield. Use the defog mode to clear the windows of fog or moisture. Use the front defrost button to defrost the front windshield.

 **(Defog):** Use this setting to clear the windows of fog or moisture. Press the mode button to select this setting. This setting will deliver air to the floor and windshield outlets.


 **(Defrost):** Press this button to defrost the windshield. The system will automatically control the fan speed if you select defrost from AUTO mode. If the outside temperature is 40°F (4°C) or warmer, your air conditioning compressor will automatically run to help dehumidify the air and dry the windshield.

## Rear Window Defogger

If your vehicle has this feature, the lines you see on the rear window warm the glass. The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

 **(Rear):** Press this button to turn on or off the rear window defogger and heated mirrors, if equipped. An indicator light in the button will come on to let you know that the rear window defogger and heated mirrors, if equipped, are activated.

The rear window defogger will turn off about 10 minutes after the button is pressed. If you need additional warming time, press the button again.

 **(Mirror):** If your vehicle does not have a rear defogger and is equipped with heated mirrors, your vehicle will have this button to activate them.

**Notice:** Do not use a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window. Do not adhere anything to the defogger grid lines in the rear glass. These actions may damage the rear defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

## Outlet Adjustment

Your vehicle has air outlets located in the center and on the side of your instrument panel that allow you to adjust the direction and amount of airflow inside the vehicle. Move the louvers up or down. Use the thumbwheel next to or underneath the outlet to close the louvers. For the most efficient airflow and temperature control, keep the outlet in the fully opened position.

## Operation Tips

- Keep the hood and front air inlets free of ice, snow, or any other obstruction, such as leaves. The heater and defroster will work far better, reducing the chance of fogging the inside of your windows.
- Keep the air path under the front seats clear of objects. This helps air to circulate throughout your vehicle.
- Adding outside equipment to the front of your vehicle, such as hood-air deflectors, etc., may affect the performance of the heating and air conditioning system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

## Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators

This part describes the warning lights and gages on your vehicle. The pictures will help you locate them.

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or

replacement. Paying attention to your warning lights and gages could also save you or others from injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. As you will see in the details on the next few pages, some warning lights come on briefly when you start the engine just to let you know they are working. If you are familiar with this section, you should not be alarmed when this happens.

Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to let you know when there is a problem with your vehicle.

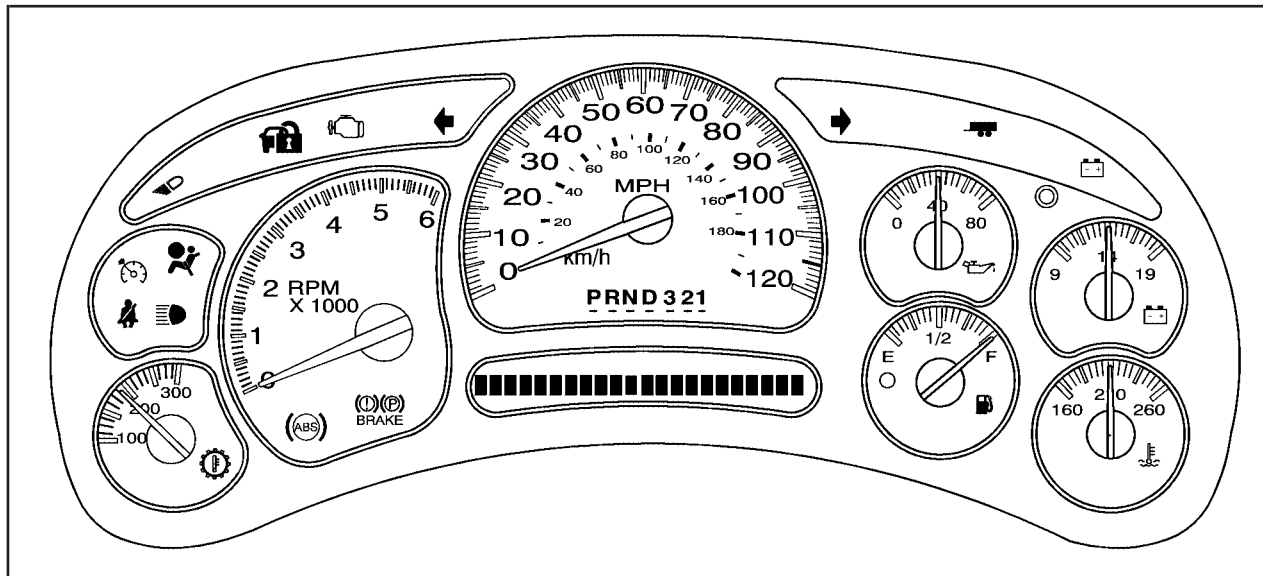
When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on when you are driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that tells you what to do about it. Please follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly – and even dangerous. So please get to know your warning lights and gages. They are a big help.

Your vehicle also has a Driver Information Center (DIC) that works along with warning lights and gages. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 190*.



## Instrument Panel Cluster

Your instrument panel cluster is designed to let you know at a glance how your vehicle is running. You'll know how fast you're going, about how much fuel you have and many other things you'll need to know to drive safely and economically.



United States version shown, Canada similar

## Speedometer and Odometer

Your speedometer lets you see your speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h). Your odometer shows how far your vehicle has been driven, in either miles (used in the United States) or kilometers (used in Canada).

## Engine Hour Meter Display

The Driver Information Center (DIC) can also display the number of hours the engine has run. To display the engine hours, turn the ignition off, press and hold the reset button for at least four seconds. The hour meter will be displayed for up to 30 seconds, or until the ignition is turned on. See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 186* for more information.

## Trip Odometer

The trip odometer can tell you how far your vehicle has been driven since you last set the trip odometer to zero.

Press the reset button, located on the instrument panel cluster next to the trip odometer display, to toggle between the trip odometer and the regular odometer. Holding the reset button for approximately one second while the trip odometer is displayed will reset it.

To display the odometer reading with the ignition off, press the reset button.

## Tachometer

Your tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

## Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the key is turned to RUN or START, a chime will come on for several seconds to remind people to fasten their safety belts, unless the driver's safety belt is already buckled.

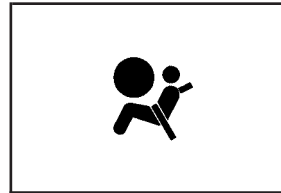


The safety belt light will also come on and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more.

If the driver's belt is already buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

## Airbag Readiness Light

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag's electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensors, the airbag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module and, if equipped, the passenger sensing system. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System* on page 64.



This light will come on when you start your vehicle, and it will flash for a few seconds. This means the system is ready.

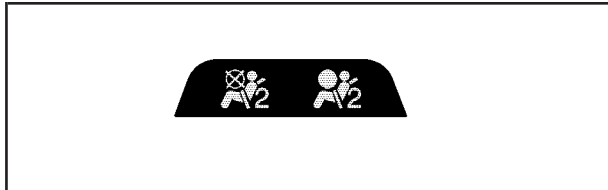
If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while you are driving, the airbag system may not be working properly. Have your vehicle serviced right away.

## Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

Your vehicle has the passenger sensing system. Your rearview mirror has a passenger airbag status indicator.



United States



Canada

When the ignition key is turned to RUN or START, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger's frontal airbag.

Your vehicle has a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint. A label on your sun visor says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

 **CAUTION:**

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is failsafe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger's frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate).

 **CAUTION:**

If the on indicator comes on when you have a rear-facing child restraint installed in the right front passenger's seat, it means that the passenger sensing system has not turned off the passenger's frontal airbag. A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Do not use a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger's seat if the airbag is turned on.

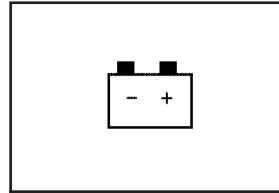
If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 73* for more on this, including important safety information.

If, after several seconds, all status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service.

 **CAUTION:**

**If the off indicator and the airbag readiness light ever come on together, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger seat may not have the protection of the frontal airbag. See *Airbag Readiness Light* on page 171.**

## Battery Warning Light



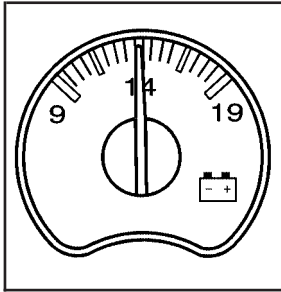
If this light comes on when the engine is running, there could be a problem with the charging system.

The battery display will also stay on while the key is in RUN until the engine is started.

If the light stays on after starting the engine it could indicate a problem with the generator drive belt, or some other charging system problem. Have it checked right away. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

If you must drive a short distance with this light on, it helps to turn off all your accessories, such as the radio and the air conditioner.

## Voltmeter Gage



When your engine is not running, but the ignition is in RUN, this gage shows your battery's state of charge in DC volts.

When the engine is running, the gage shows the condition of the charging system. The gage may transition from a higher to lower or a lower to higher reading, this is normal. Readings between the low and high warning zones indicate the normal operating range.

Readings in the low warning zone may occur when a large number of electrical accessories are operating in the vehicle and the engine is left at an idle for an extended period. This condition is normal since the charging system is not able to provide full power at engine idle. As engine speeds are increased, this condition should correct itself as higher engine speeds allow the charging system to create maximum power.

You can only drive for a short time with the reading in either warning zone. If you must drive, turn off all unnecessary accessories.

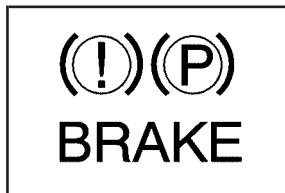
Readings in either warning zone indicate a possible problem in the electrical system. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

## Brake System Warning Light

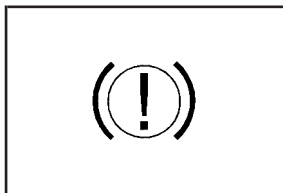
With the ignition on, the brake system warning light will flash when you set the parking brake. The light will flash if the parking brake does not release fully. If you try to drive with the parking brake engaged, a chime will sound when the vehicle speed is greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Your vehicle's hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part is not working, the other part can still work and stop you. For good braking, though, you need both parts working well.

If the warning light comes on and a chime sounds there could be a brake problem. Have your brake system inspected right away.



United States



Canada

This light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to RUN. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

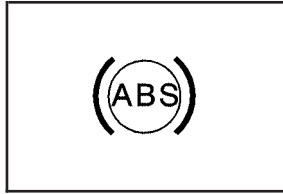
If the light comes on while you are driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. You may notice that the pedal is harder to push or may go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle* on page 303.

### CAUTION:

**Your brake system may not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to an accident. If the light is still on after you have pulled off the road and stopped carefully, have the vehicle towed for service.**



## Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light



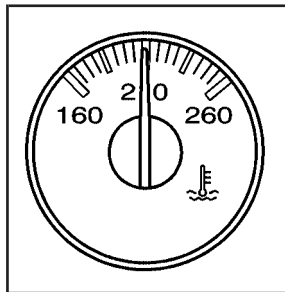
With the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), this light will come on when you start your engine and may stay on for several seconds.

That is normal. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

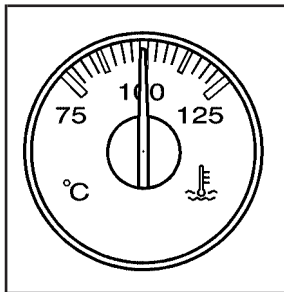
If the light stays on, or comes on when you are driving, your vehicle needs service. A chime will sound when the light stays on. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, you still have brakes, but you do not have ABS. If the regular brake system warning light is also on you do not have ABS and there is a problem with your regular brakes. In addition to both lights, you will also hear a chime sound on the first occurrence of a problem and each time the vehicle is shut off and then restarted. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 176*.

The ABS warning light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to RUN. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gage



United States

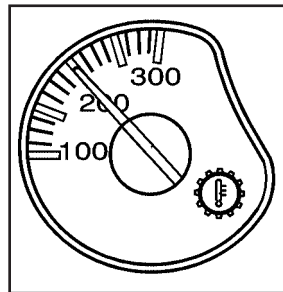


Canada

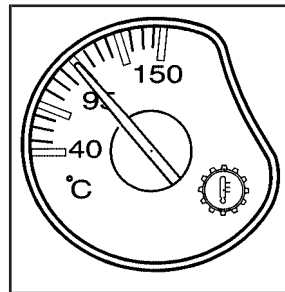
This gage shows the engine coolant temperature. It also provides an indicator of how hard your vehicle is working. During a majority of the operation, the gage will read 210°F (100°C) or less. If you are pulling a load or going up hills, it is normal for the temperature to fluctuate and approach the 250°F (122°C) mark. If the gage reaches the 260°F (125°C) mark, it indicates that the cooling system is working beyond its capacity.

See *Engine Overheating* on page 350.

## Transmission Temperature Gage



United States



Canada

Your vehicle may be equipped with a transmission temperature gage.

When your ignition is on, the gage shows the temperature of the transmission fluid. The normal operating range is from 100°F (38°C) to about 265°F (130°C).

At approximately 265°F (130°C), the message center will display a TRANSMISSION HOT message and the transmission will enter a transmission protection mode. When the transmission enters the protection mode, you may notice a change in the transmission shifting patterns. The transmission will return to normal shifting patterns when the transmission fluid temperature falls below 260°F (125°C).

See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 186* for further information.

If the transmission fluid reaches temperatures of approximately 275°F (135°C) or greater, the Driver Information Center will display a TRANS HOT IDLE ENGINE warning message, and a chime will sound. Pull the vehicle off the roadway when it is safe to do so. Set the parking brake, place the transmission in PARK (P) and allow the engine to idle until the transmission temperature falls below 260°F (125°C). If the transmission continues to operate above 265°F (130°C), contact your nearest dealer or the GM Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 474*.

**Notice:** If you drive your vehicle with the transmission temperature gage above normal operating range, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that would not be covered by your warranty. Do not drive your vehicle while the transmission temperature gage reading is above normal. See your dealer for service.

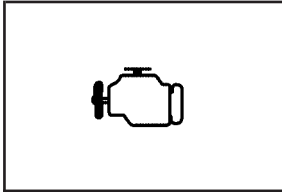
The following situations can cause the transmission to operate at higher temperatures:

- Towing a trailer
- Hot outside air temperatures
- Hauling a large or heavy load
- Low transmission fluid level
- High transmission fluid level
- Restricted air flow to the radiator and the auxiliary transmission oil cooler, if equipped.

A temporary solution to hotter transmission operating temperatures may be to let the transmission cool down. If the transmission is operated at higher temperatures on a frequent basis, see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 449* for the proper transmission maintenance intervals.

# Malfunction Indicator Lamp

## Check Engine Light



Your vehicle has a computer which monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems.

This system is called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) and is intended to assure that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment. The check engine light comes on to indicate that there is a problem and service is required. Malfunctions often will be indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. This may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle. This system is also designed to assist your service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

**Notice:** If you keep driving your vehicle with this light on, after awhile, your emission controls may not work as well, your fuel economy may not be as good, and your engine may not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered by your warranty.

**Notice:** Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of your vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect your vehicle's emission controls and may cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty. This may also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 324*.

This light should come on, as a check to show you it is working, when the ignition is on and the engine is not running. If the light does not come on, have it repaired. This light will also come on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

- **Light Flashing** — A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and may damage the emission control system on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service may be required.
- **Light On Steady** — An emission control system malfunction has been detected on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service may be required.

## If the Light is Flashing

The following may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle:

- Reducing vehicle speed
- Avoiding hard accelerations
- Avoiding steep uphill grades
- If you are towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible

If the light stops flashing and remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park your vehicle. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds and restart the engine. If the light remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps, and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

## If the Light Is On Steady

You may be able to correct the emission system malfunction by considering the following:

Did you recently put fuel into your vehicle?

If so, reinstall the fuel cap, making sure to fully install the cap. See *Filling the Tank on page 329*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap will allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.

Did you just drive through a deep puddle of water?

If so, your electrical system may be wet. The condition will usually be corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.

Have you recently changed brands of fuel?

If so, be sure to fuel your vehicle with quality fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 326*. Poor fuel quality will cause your engine not to run as efficiently as designed. You may notice this as stalling after start-up, stalling when you put the vehicle into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. (These conditions may go away once the engine is warmed up.) This will be detected by the system and cause the light to turn on.

If you experience one or more of these conditions, change the fuel brand you use. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

If none of the above steps have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. Your dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that may have developed.

## **Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs**

Some state/provincial and local governments have or may begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

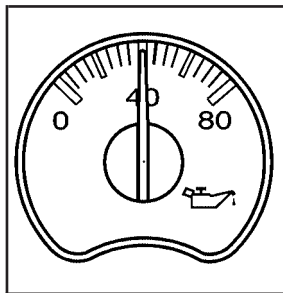
Here are some things you need to know to help your vehicle pass an inspection:

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the check engine light is on or not working properly.

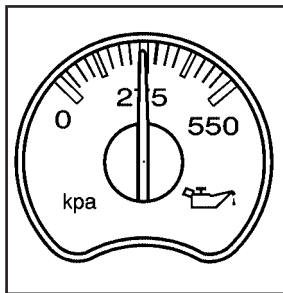
Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system.

The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if you have recently replaced your battery or if your battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This may take several days of routine driving. If you have done this and your vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD system readiness, your GM dealer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

## Oil Pressure Gage



United States



Canada

The oil pressure gage shows the engine oil pressure in psi (pounds per square inch) when the engine is running. Canadian vehicles indicate pressure in kPa (kilopascals).

Oil pressure may vary with engine speed, outside temperature and oil viscosity, but readings above the low pressure zone indicate the normal operating range.

A reading in the low pressure zone may be caused by a dangerously low oil level or some other problem causing low oil pressure. Check your oil as soon as possible. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 190* and *Engine Oil on page 336*.

### CAUTION:

Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. If you do, your engine can become so hot that it catches fire. You or others could be burned. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.

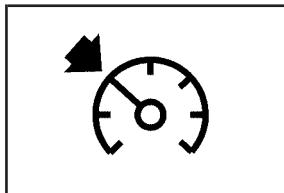
**Notice:** Lack of proper engine oil maintenance may damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.

## Security Light



This light flashes when the vehicle security system is activated.

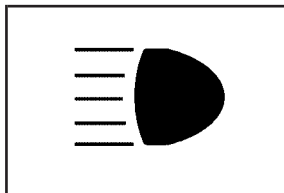
## Cruise Control Light



This light comes on whenever you set your cruise control.

The light will go out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 149* for more information.

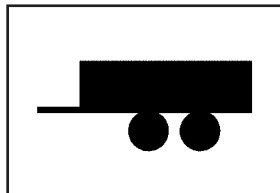
## Highbeam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 147*.

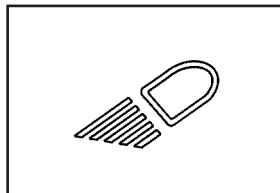
## Tow/Haul Mode Light



This light is displayed when the Tow/Haul mode has been activated.

For more information, see *Towing a Trailer on page 304*.

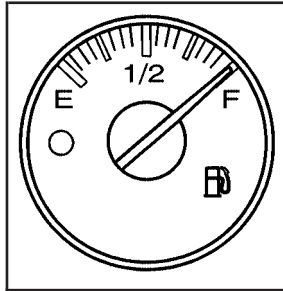
## Cargo Lamp Light



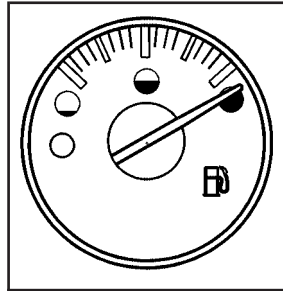
This light comes on when the cargo lamp is in use. For more information see *Cargo Lamp on page 158*.



## Fuel Gage



United States



Canada

When the ignition is on, the fuel gage tells you about how much fuel you have left in your tank.

The gage will first indicate empty before you are out of fuel, and you should get more fuel as soon as possible.

Here are some situations you may experience with your fuel gage. None of these indicate a problem with the fuel gage.

- At the gas station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the fuel gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gage goes back to empty when you turn off the ignition.

## Low Fuel Warning Light

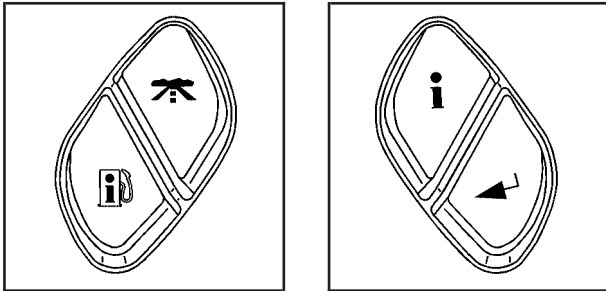
The light next to the fuel gage will come on briefly when you are starting the engine.


This light comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. To turn it off, add fuel to the fuel tank.


See *Fuel* on page 326.


## Driver Information Center (DIC)


The Driver Information Center (DIC) display is located on the instrument panel cluster, below the speedometer. The DIC buttons are located on the steering wheel. The DIC can display information such as the trip odometer, fuel economy, customization features and warning/status messages.



 **(Trip Information):** Press this button to display the odometer, trip odometers, timer, and engine hours.

 **(Fuel Information):** Press this button to display the current range, fuel used, average fuel economy, and engine oil life.

 **(Customization):** Press this button to access the vehicle settings menu and customize the personal settings on your vehicle.

 **(Select):** Press this button to reset certain DIC functions and set your customization settings.


Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge DIC messages and clear them from the DIC display.

### DIC Operation and Displays

The Driver Information Center (DIC) comes on when the ignition is on. After a short delay, the DIC will display the information that was last displayed before the engine was turned off.

The DIC has different modes which can be accessed by pressing the four DIC buttons located on the steering wheel. These buttons are trip information, fuel information, customization, and select. The button functions are detailed in the following pages.

## Trip Information Button

 **(Trip Information):** Press the trip information button to scroll through the ODOMETER, TRIP A, TRIP B, TIMER, and ENGINE HOURS.

**Odometer:** Press the trip information button until ODOMETER appears on the display. This mode shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven in either miles or kilometers. Pressing the reset stem located on the instrument cluster with the vehicle off will also display the odometer.

**Trip A:** Press the trip information button until TRIP A appears on the display. This mode shows the current distance traveled since the last reset for TRIP A in either miles or kilometers.

**Trip B:** Press the trip information button until TRIP B appears on the display. This mode shows the current distance traveled since the last reset for TRIP B in either miles or kilometers.

To reset TRIP A or TRIP B information, press and hold the select button for one second while in one of the trip modes. This will reset the information for TRIP A or TRIP B.

You can also reset TRIP A or TRIP B while they are displayed by pressing the reset stem on the cluster. If you press and hold the reset stem or the select button for four seconds, the display will show the distance traveled since the last ignition cycle for TRIP A or TRIP B.

See *Trip Odometer on page 170* for more information.


**Timer:** The DIC can be used as a timer. Press the select button while TIMER is displayed to start the timer. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset, not including time the ignition is off. Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after which the display will roll back to zero.

To stop the counting of time, press the select button briefly while TIMER is displayed.

To reset the timer to zero, press and hold the select button while TIMER is displayed.

**Engine Hours:** Press the trip information button until ENGINE HOURS appears on the display. This mode shows the total number of hours the engine has run. Pressing and holding the reset stem located on the instrument cluster for about four seconds will also display the engine hour information after the odometer is displayed when the vehicle is off.

## Fuel Information Button

 **(Fuel Information):** Press the fuel information button to scroll through the range, fuel used, average fuel economy, and the engine oil life system.

**Fuel Range:** Press the fuel information button until RANGE appears on the display. This mode shows the remaining distance you can drive without refueling. It is based on fuel economy and the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. The display will show LOW if the fuel level is low.

The fuel economy data used to determine fuel range is an average of recent driving conditions. As your driving conditions change, this data is gradually updated. Fuel range cannot be reset.

**Fuel Used:** Press the fuel information button until FUEL USED appears on the display. This mode shows the number of gallons or liters of fuel used since the last reset of this menu item. To reset the fuel used information, press and hold the select button for one second while FUEL USED is displayed.

**Average Fuel Economy:** Press the fuel information button until AVG ECON appears on the display. This mode shows how many miles per gallon (MPG) or liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) your vehicle is getting based on current and past driving conditions.

Press and hold the select button for one second while AVG ECON is displayed to reset the average fuel economy. Average fuel economy will then be calculated starting from that point. If the average fuel economy is not reset, it will be continually updated each time you drive.

**Engine Oil Life System:** Press the fuel information button until ENGINE OIL LIFE appears on the display. The engine oil life system shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. It will show 100% when the system is reset after an oil change. It will alert you to change your oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions.

Always reset the engine oil life system after an oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 339*.

In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Engine Oil on page 336* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 449*.

## Customization Button

**i (Customization):** Press the customization button to access the VEHICLE SETTINGS menu and customize the settings to your vehicle. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 199* for more information.

## Select Button

**◀ (Select):** Press the select button to reset certain DIC functions and set your customization settings. For example, this button will reset the trip odometers and enables you to scroll through and select the language in which the DIC information will appear.

## DIC Warnings and Messages

Warning messages are displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC) to notify the driver that the status of the vehicle has changed and that some action may be needed by the driver to correct the condition. If there is more than one message that needs to be displayed, they will appear one after another. Some messages may not require immediate action, but you should press any of the four DIC buttons on the steering wheel or the trip odometer reset stem on the instrument panel cluster to acknowledge that you received the messages and to clear them from the display. Some messages cannot be cleared from the display because they are more urgent. These messages require action before they can be removed from the DIC display. You should take any messages that appear on the display seriously and remember that clearing the messages will only make the messages disappear, not correct the problem. The following are the possible messages that can be displayed and some information about them.

### BATTERY NOT CHARGING

On some vehicles, if the battery is not charging during operation, this message will appear on the DIC. Driving with this problem could drain the battery. Have the electrical system checked by your dealer as soon as possible. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display. See *Battery Warning Light on page 174* and *Voltmeter Gage on page 175*.

### BUCKLE PASSENGER

If your vehicle has the passenger sensing system, this message reminds you to buckle the passenger's safety belt. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 73*.

This message will display and a chime will sound when the ignition is on, the driver's safety belt is buckled, the passenger's safety belt is unbuckled with the passenger airbag enabled, and the vehicle is in motion. You should have the passenger buckle their safety belt.

This reminder will be repeated if the ignition is on, the vehicle is in motion, the driver is buckled and the passenger is still unbuckled, and the passenger airbag is enabled. If the passenger's safety belt is already buckled, this message and chime will not come on.

Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## **BUCKLE SEATBELT**

If your vehicle has the passenger sensing system, this message reminds you to buckle the driver's safety belt. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 73*.

This message will display and a chime will sound when the ignition is on, the driver's safety belt is unbuckled, and the vehicle is in motion. You should buckle your safety belt.

If the driver remains unbuckled when the ignition is on and the vehicle is in motion, the reminder will be repeated. If the driver's safety belt is already buckled, this message and chime will not come on.

This message is an additional reminder to the Safety Belt Reminder Light in the instrument panel cluster. See *Safety Belt Reminder Light on page 171*.

Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## **CHANGE ENGINE OIL**

This message is displayed for 10 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle when the engine oil needs to be changed.

When you change the engine oil, be sure to reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 339*, *Engine Oil on page 336*, and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 449* for more information.

## CHARGING SYSTEM FAILURE

On some vehicles, if there is a problem with the generator and battery charging system, this message will appear on the DIC, a chime will sound, and the battery warning light on the instrument panel cluster will come on. Driving with this problem could drain the battery. Turn off all unnecessary accessories. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have the electrical system checked by your dealer immediately. See *Battery Warning Light on page 174* and *Voltmeter Gage on page 175* for more information.

## CHECK OIL LEVEL

If the oil level in the vehicle is low, this message will appear on the DIC. Check the oil level and correct it as necessary. You may need to let the vehicle cool or warm up and cycle the ignition to be sure this message will clear. The message will be displayed for 10 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle when the oil needs to be checked. Once the problem is corrected, pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## CHECK WASHER FLUID

If the washer fluid level is low, this message will appear on the DIC. Adding washer fluid to the windshield washer reservoir will clear the message. See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 361*. The message will be displayed for 10 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle when the washer fluid is low. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## DRIVER DOOR AJAR

If the driver's door is not fully closed, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.



## ENGINE COOLANT HOT

If the cooling system temperature gets hot, this message will appear in the DIC. Turn off the air conditioning. If the message is still on, or if the engine coolant temperature gage continues to rise, pull the vehicle over when it is safe to do so. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 178* for more information. Stop the vehicle and let the engine idle in PARK (P) for a few minutes to allow the coolant to reach a safe temperature. This message will clear when the coolant temperature drops to safe operating temperature. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## ENGINE OVERHEATED

**Notice:** If you drive your vehicle while the engine is overheating, severe engine damage may occur. If an overheat warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not increase the engine speed above normal idling speed. See *Engine Overheating on page 350* for more information.

If the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation, this message will appear in the DIC and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message will clear when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

## FUEL LEVEL LOW

If the fuel level is low, this message will appear on the DIC and you will hear a chime. Refuel as soon as possible. The message will be displayed for 10 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle when the fuel level is low. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display. See *Low Fuel Warning Light on page 185*, *Fuel Gage on page 185*, and *Fuel on page 326*.

## KEYFOB X BATTERY LOW

If a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter battery is low, this message will appear on the DIC. The battery needs to be replaced in the transmitter. See “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry System Operation on page 87*. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR

If the driver’s side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## OIL LIFE RESET

This message will appear on the display for about 10 seconds after resetting the change engine oil message. See “Engine Oil Life System” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 186* and *Engine Oil on page 336* for more information.

## OIL PRESSURE LOW

**Notice:** If you drive your vehicle while the engine oil pressure is low, severe engine damage may occur. If a low oil pressure warning appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC), stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive the vehicle until the cause of the low oil pressure is corrected. See *Engine Oil on page 336* for more information.

If low oil pressure levels occur, this message will be displayed on the DIC and a chime will sound. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer.

## **PASSENGER DOOR AJAR**

If the passenger's door is not fully closed, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## **REDUCED ENGINE POWER**

This message is displayed when the cooling system temperature gets too hot and the engine further enters the engine coolant protection mode. See *Engine Overheating on page 350* for further information.

This message will also display when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

## **RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR**

If the passenger's side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## SERVICE 4WD (Four-Wheel-Drive)

If a problem occurs with the all-wheel-drive system, this message will appear on the DIC. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the all-wheel-drive system needs service. See your dealer. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## SERVICE AIRBAG

If there is a problem with the airbag system, this message will be displayed on the DIC. Have your dealer inspect the system for problems. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 171* and *Airbag System on page 64* for more information. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## SERVICE BRAKE BOOSTER

### CAUTION:

**Your brake system may not be working properly if the SERVICE BRAKE BOOSTER message is displayed.**

**If the brake system warning light is also on, you should have the vehicle towed for service. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 176*.**

**If the brake system warning light is not on, you still have brakes, but the supplemental brake assist system may not operate properly. In the event of a vacuum loss, you may not have vacuum power assist for braking. The brake pedal will be harder to push and it will take longer to stop. If you continue to drive with this message displayed it can lead to a crash. Have the brake system serviced as soon as possible.**

If your vehicle has vacuum assist power brakes, this message will be displayed on the DIC when there is a problem with the Supplemental Brake Assist system. If the message is displayed immediately after starting the vehicle or the message appears while driving, the Supplemental Brake Assist system needs service. See your dealer. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 176*.

## **SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM**

If there is a problem with the brake system, this message will be displayed on the DIC. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the brake system needs service. See your dealer.

## **SERVICE CHARGING SYSTEM**

On some vehicles, if there is a problem with the battery charging system, this message will appear on the DIC. Under certain conditions, the battery warning light may also turn on in the instrument panel cluster. See *Battery Warning Light on page 174*. The battery will not be charging at an optimal rate and the vehicle will lose the ability to enter the fuel economy mode. The vehicle is safe to drive, however you should have the electrical system checked by your dealer. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## **TIGHTEN FUEL CAP**

If the vehicle's fuel cap is not tightened properly, this message may appear along with the check engine light on the instrument panel. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 180*. Reinstall the fuel cap fully. See *Filling the Tank on page 329*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap will allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light and message off.

## TRANS (Transmission) HOT IDLE ENGINE

**Notice:** If you drive your vehicle while the transmission fluid is overheating and the transmission temperature warning is displayed on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that would not be covered by your warranty. Do not drive your vehicle with overheated transmission fluid or while the transmission temperature warning is displayed.

If the transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot, this message will appear on the DIC along with a continuous chime. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message will clear and the chime will stop when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level. See *Transmission Temperature Gage on page 178*.

## TRANSMISSION HOT

**Notice:** If you drive your vehicle while the transmission fluid is overheating and the transmission temperature warning is displayed on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that would not be covered by your warranty. Do not drive your vehicle with overheated transmission fluid or while the transmission temperature warning is displayed.

If the transmission fluid temperature becomes high, this message will appear on the DIC display.

When the transmission enters the protection mode, you may notice a change in the transmission shifting patterns. When the transmission fluid temperature returns to normal, the display will turn off and the transmission shifting patterns will return to normal.

If the vehicle has the Tow/Haul mode, use this feature if the transmission is operating at higher temperatures and/or the following situations exist, which can cause the transmission to operate at higher temperatures:

- Towing a trailer
- Hot outside air temperatures
- Hauling a large or heavy load
- Over-loading
- Low transmission fluid level
- High transmission fluid level
- Restricted air flow to the radiator and the auxiliary transmission oil cooler

A temporary solution to hotter transmission operating temperatures may be to let the transmission cool down. If the transmission is operated at higher temperatures on a frequent basis, see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 449* for the transmission your vehicle is equipped with for the proper transmission maintenance intervals. Also see *Transmission Temperature Gage on page 178* for more information.

## TURN SIGNAL ON

If a turn signal is left on for 3/4 of a mile (1.2 km), this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Move the turn signal/multifunction lever to the off position. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons or the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

## DIC Vehicle Customization

Your vehicle may have customization capabilities that allow you to program some features to one setting based on your preference. All of the customizable options listed may not be available on your vehicle. Only the options available will be displayed on your Driver Information Center (DIC).

The default settings for the customization features were set when your vehicle left the factory, but may have been changed from their default state since then.

To change feature preferences, make sure the ignition is on and the vehicle is in PARK (P). To avoid excessive drain on the battery, it is recommended that the headlamps are turned off. Press the customization button to scroll through the available customizable options.

After pressing the customization button, VEHICLE SETTINGS will momentarily display before going to a customization option.

## Lock Doors

Press the customization button until LOCK DOORS appears in the display. To select your preference for automatic locking, press the select button while LOCK DOORS is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**LOCK DOORS: IN GEAR (default):** The doors will lock when the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P).

**LOCK DOORS: WITH SPEED:** The doors will lock when the vehicle speed is above 8 mph (13 km/h) for three seconds.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

## Unlock Doors

Press the customization button until UNLOCK DOORS appears in the display. To select your preference for automatic unlocking, press the select button while UNLOCK DOORS is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**UNLOCK DOORS: IN PARK (default):** All of the doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

**UNLOCK DRIVER: IN PARK:** The driver's door will be unlocked when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

**UNLOCK DOORS: KEY OUT:** All of the doors will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

**UNLOCK DOORS: MANUALLY:** The doors will not be unlocked automatically.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.



## Door Lock Delay

If your DIC does not have this feature, you can still program the delayed locking feature. See *Delayed Locking on page 92* for more information.

When locking the doors with the power lock switch or the keyless entry transmitter and a door is open, the delayed locking feature will delay locking the doors until five seconds after the last door is closed.

Press the customization button until DOOR LOCK DELAY appears in the display. To select your preference for delayed locking, press the select button while DOOR LOCK DELAY is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**DOOR LOCK DELAY: OFF (default):** The doors will lock immediately when pressing the power lock switch or the lock button on the keyless entry transmitter.

**DOOR LOCK DELAY: ON:** The doors will not lock until five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use. You can temporarily override delayed locking by pressing the lock button on the door or keyless entry transmitter a second time.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

This feature will not operate if the key is in the ignition.

## Lock Feedback

Press the customization button until LOCK FEEDBACK appears in the display. To select your preference for the feedback you receive when locking the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter, press the select button while LOCK FEEDBACK is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**LOCK FEEDBACK: BOTH (default):** The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the lock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter and the horn will chirp the second time you press the lock button.

**LOCK FEEDBACK: LAMPS:** The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the lock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

**LOCK FEEDBACK: HORN:** The horn will chirp the second time you press the button with the lock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

**LOCK FEEDBACK: OFF:** There will be no feedback when locking the vehicle.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

### **Unlock Feedback**

Press the customization button until UNLOCK FEEDBACK appears in the display. To select your preference for the feedback you will receive when unlocking the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter, press the select button while UNLOCK FEEDBACK is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**UNLOCK FEEDBACK: LAMPS (default):** The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

**UNLOCK FEEDBACK: HORN:** The horn will chirp the second time you press the button with the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

**UNLOCK FEEDBACK: BOTH:** The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter and the horn will chirp the second time you press the unlock button.

**UNLOCK FEEDBACK: OFF:** There will be no feedback when unlocking the vehicle.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

### **Headlamp Delay**

Press the customization button until HEADLAMP DELAY appears in the display. To select your preference for how long the headlamps will stay on when you turn off the vehicle, press the select button while HEADLAMP DELAY is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

- HEADLAMP DELAY: 10 SEC (Seconds) (default)
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 20 SEC
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 40 SEC
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 1 MIN (Minute)

- HEADLAMP DELAY: 2 MIN
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 3 MIN
- HEADLAMP DELAY: OFF

The amount of time you choose will be the amount of time that the headlamps stay on after you turn off the vehicle. If you choose off, the headlamps will turn off as soon as you turn off the vehicle.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

### **Perimeter Lights**

Press the customization button until PERIMETER LIGHTS appears in the display. To select your preference for perimeter lighting, press the select button while PERIMETER LIGHTS is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**PERIMETER LIGHTS: ON (default):** The headlamps and back-up lamps will come on for 40 seconds, if it is dark enough outside, when you unlock the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter.

**PERIMETER LIGHTS: OFF:** The perimeter lights will not come on when you unlock the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

### **Easy Exit Seat**

Press the customization button until EASY EXIT SEAT appears in the display. To select your preference for seat position exit, press the select button while EASY EXIT SEAT is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**EASY EXIT SEAT: OFF (default):** No seat exit recall will occur.

**EASY EXIT SEAT: ON:** The driver's seat will move to the exit position when the key is removed from the ignition.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on seat position exit, see *Memory Seat and Mirrors on page 10*.

## Curb View

Press the customization button until CURB VIEW appears in the display. To select your preference for curb view, press the select button while CURB VIEW is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**CURB VIEW: OFF (default):** Neither outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

**CURB VIEW: PASSENGER:** The passenger's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

**CURB VIEW: DRIVER:** The driver's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

**CURB VIEW: BOTH:** The driver's and passenger's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on tilt mirror in reverse, see *Outside Curb View Assist Mirrors on page 120*.

## Alarm Warning

Press the customization button until ALARM WARNING appears in the display. To select your preference for alarm warning, press the select button while ALARM WARNING is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**ALARM WARNING: BOTH (default):** The headlamps will flash and the horn will chirp when the alarm is active.

**ALARM WARNING: OFF:** There will be no alarm warning on activation.

**ALARM WARNING: HORN:** The horn will chirp when the alarm is active.

**ALARM WARNING: LAMPS:** The headlamps will flash when the alarm is active.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while your choice is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on alarm warning type, see *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 96*.

## Language

To select your preference for display language, press the select button while LANGUAGE is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following languages:

- ENGLISH
- FRANCAIS (French)
- ESPANOL (Spanish)

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it.

If you accidentally choose a language that you do not want or understand, press and hold the customization button and the trip information button at the same time. The DIC will begin scrolling through the languages in their particular language. English will be in English, Francais will be in French and Espanol will be in Spanish. When you see the language that you would like, release both buttons. The DIC will then display the information in the language you chose.

You can also scroll through the different languages by pressing and holding the trip reset stem for four seconds, as long as you are in the odometer mode.

## Display Units

Press the customization button until DISPLAY UNITS appears in the display. To select English or metric, press the select button while DISPLAY UNITS is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

- DISPLAY UNITS: ENGLISH
- DISPLAY UNITS: METRIC

If you choose English, all information will be displayed in English units. For example, distance in miles and fuel economy in miles per gallon. If you choose metric, all information will be displayed in metric units. For example, distance in kilometers and fuel economy in liters per 100 kilometers.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and end out of the customizable options.

## Audio System(s)

Determine which radio your vehicle has and then read the pages following to familiarize yourself with its features.

Driving without distraction is a necessity for a safer driving experience. See *Defensive Driving on page 252*. By taking a few moments to read this manual and get familiar with your vehicle's audio system, you can use it with less effort, as well as take advantage of its features. While your vehicle is parked, set up your audio system by presetting your favorite radio stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers. Then, when driving conditions permit, you can tune to your favorite stations using the presets and steering wheel controls if the vehicle has them.

### CAUTION:

**This system provides you with a far greater access to audio stations and song listings. Giving extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving can cause a crash and you or others can be injured or killed. Always keep your eyes on the road and your mind on the drive — avoid engaging in extended searching while driving.**

Keeping your mind on the drive is important for safe driving. Here are some ways in which you can help avoid distraction while driving.

While your vehicle is parked:

- Familiarize yourself with all of its controls.
- Familiarize yourself with its operation.
- Set up your audio system by presetting your favorite radio stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers. Then, when driving conditions permit, you can tune to your favorite radio stations using the presets and steering wheel controls if the vehicle has them.

**Notice:** Before adding any sound equipment to your vehicle, such as an audio system, CD player, CB radio, mobile telephone, or two-way radio, make sure that it can be added by checking with your dealer. Also, check federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone units. If sound equipment can be added, it is very important to do it properly. Added sound equipment may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and even damage them. Your vehicle's systems may interfere with the operation of sound equipment that has been added.

**Notice:** The chime signals related to safety belts, parking brake, and other functions of your vehicle operate through the radio/entertainment system. If that equipment is replaced or additional equipment is added to your vehicle, the chimes may not work. Make sure that replacement or additional equipment is compatible with your vehicle before installing it. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 324*.

Your vehicle has a feature called Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 101* for more information.

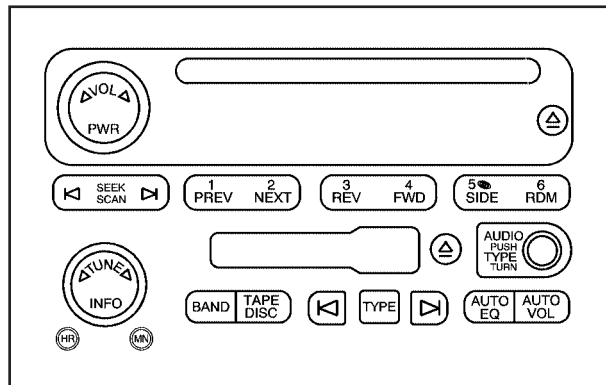
## Setting the Time

Press and hold the HR button until the correct hour appears on the display. Press and hold the MN button until the correct minute appears on the display. The time can be set with the ignition on or off.

To synchronize the time with an FM station broadcasting Radio Data System (RDS) information, press and hold the hour and minute buttons at the same time until RDS TIME appears on the display. To accept this time, press and hold the hour and minute buttons, at the same time, for another two seconds. If the time is not available from the station, NO UPDAT will appear on the display.

RDS time is broadcast once a minute. After tuning to an RDS broadcast station, it may take a few minutes for the time to update.

## Radio with Cassette and CD





## Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has a Radio Data System (RDS). RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information.

With RDS, the radio can do the following:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies
- Display messages from radio stations

This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and will only work when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that will cause the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While the radio is tuned to an RDS station, the station name or call letters will appear on the display instead of the frequency. RDS stations may also provide the time of day, a program type (PTY) for current programming, and the name of the program being broadcast.

## XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and Canada. XM™ offers a large variety of coast-to-coast channels including music, news, sports, talk, traffic/weather (U.S. subscribers), and children's programming. XM™ provides digital quality audio and text information that includes song title and artist name. A service fee is required in order to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™; In the U.S. at [www.xmradio.com](http://www.xmradio.com) or call 1-800-852-XXXM (9696) or in Canada at [www.xmradio.ca](http://www.xmradio.ca) or call 1-877-GET-XMSR (438-9677).

## Playing the Radio

**PWR (Power):** Press this knob to turn the system on and off.

◀ **VOL** ▶ (**Volume**): Turn this knob to increase or to decrease volume.

**INFO (Information):** When the ignition is off, press this knob to display the time.

For RDS, press the INFO knob to change what appears on the display while using RDS. The display options are station name, RDS station frequency, PTY, and the name of the program (if available).

For XM™ (if equipped), press the INFO knob while in XM™ mode to retrieve four different categories of information related to the current song or channel: Artist, Song Title, Category or PTY, Channel Number/Channel Name.

To change the default on the display, press the INFO knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob until you hear a beep. The selected display will now be the default.

**AUTO VOL (Automatic Volume):** If your vehicle is equipped with a Bose® audio system, it includes Bose AudioPilot® noise compensation technology. When turned on, AudioPilot® continuously adjusts the audio system equalization, to compensate for background noise, so that your music always sounds the same at the set volume level.

This feature is most effective at lower radio volume settings where background noise can affect how well you hear the music being played through your vehicle's audio system. At higher volume settings, where the music is much louder than the background noise, there may be little or no adjustments by AudioPilot®.

To use AudioPilot<sup>®</sup>, set the radio volume at a low to moderate listening level. Begin listening while the vehicle is stopped with the motor running; turn the AudioPilot<sup>®</sup> on by pressing the AUTO VOL button until AVOL ON appears on the display. Then, resume driving, gradually increasing the vehicle speed. You will notice that your music sounds the same regardless of background noises; such as road noise, tire hum, or wind. With the AudioPilot<sup>®</sup> turned off, repeat this process again without adjusting the volume or tone controls. you will notice that background noise is now audible, and will prevent you from hearing softer passages of the music. To turn AudioPilot<sup>®</sup> off, press AUTO VOL until AVOL OFF appears on the display. For additional information on AudioPilot<sup>®</sup>, please visit [www.bose.com](http://www.bose.com).

## Finding a Station

**BAND:** Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped). The display will show the selection.

**TUNE:** Turn this knob to select radio stations.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ : Press either the SEEK or the TYPE arrows to go to the next or to the previous station and stay there.

The radio will only seek stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

◀ **SCAN** ▶ : Press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio will go to a station, play for a few seconds, then go on to the next station. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again to stop scanning.

To scan preset stations, press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for more than four seconds. PSCN will appear on the display and you will hear a double beep. The radio will go to a preset station, play for a few seconds, then go on to the next preset station. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again to stop scanning presets.

The radio will only scan stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

## Setting Preset Stations

Up to 30 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM, six XM1 and six XM2 (if equipped), can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons, by performing the following steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever that numbered pushbutton is pressed, the station that was set will return for that pushbutton.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

To store an equalization setting to a preset station perform the following:

1. Tune to the preset station.
2. Press and release the AUTO EQ button to select the equalization setting.

Once the equalization no longer appears on the display, the equalization will be set for that preset station.

## Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble)

**AUDIO:** Push and release the AUDIO knob until BASS or TREB appears on the display. Turn the knob to increase or to decrease. The display will show the bass or treble level. If a station is weak or noisy, decrease the treble.

To adjust the bass or treble to the middle position while it is displayed, push and hold the AUDIO knob. The radio will produce one beep and adjust the display level to the middle position.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL CENTERED will appear on the display, you will hear a beep, and the display level will be adjusted to the middle position.

**AUTO EQ (Automatic Equalization):** Press this button to enhance the audio performance for different passengers in the vehicle.

The setting last chosen will appear on the display when you first press AUTO EQ. Each time you press this button, another setting will appear on the display and AUTO EQ will switch to one of the preset settings listed.

The audio system allows you to choose from four different equalization settings: normal, driver, rear and spacious. These settings can be used while listening to the radio, cassette or the CD player.

**NORMAL:** This setting provides the best overall vehicle sound quality for all seating locations.

**DRIVER:** This setting gives the driver the best sound quality.

**REAR:** This setting gives the rear seat passengers the best sound quality.

**SPACIOUS:** This setting makes the listening space seem larger.

The radio can save separate AUTO EQ settings for each preset and source.

## Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

**AUDIO:** To adjust the balance between the right and the left speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until BAL appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the right or the left speakers.

To adjust the fade between the front and the rear speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until FADE appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the front or the rear speakers.

To adjust the balance or fade to the middle position while it is displayed, push the AUDIO knob, then push it again and hold it until the radio produces one beep. The balance or fade will be adjusted to the middle position and the display will show the speaker balance.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL CENTERED will appear on the display, you will hear a beep, and the display level will be adjusted to the middle position.

## Finding a Program Type (PTY) Station (RDS and XM™)

To select and find a desired PTY perform the following:

1. Press the TYPE button to activate program type select mode. TYPE and a PTY will appear on the display.
2. Turn the TYPE knob or press and release the TYPE button to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY is displayed, press and release either the TYPE or the SEEK arrows to select and to take you to the PTY's first station.
4. To go to another station within that PTY and the PTY is displayed, press either the TYPE or the SEEK arrows once. If the PTY is not displayed, go back to Step 1.
5. Press either the TYPE or the SEEK arrows to exit program type select mode.

If the radio cannot find the desired program type, NONE will appear on the display and the radio will return to the last station you were listening to.

**SCAN:** Scan the stations within a PTY by performing the following:

1. Press the TYPE button to activate program type select mode. TYPE and the last selected PTY will appear on the display.
2. Turn the TYPE knob or press and release the TYPE button to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY is displayed, press and hold either the TYPE or the SCAN arrows for two seconds, and the radio will begin scanning the stations in the PTY.
4. Press either the TYPE or the SCAN arrows to stop at a station.

**BAND (Alternate Frequency):** Alternate frequency allows the radio to switch to a stronger station with the same program type. To turn alternate frequency on, press and hold BAND for two seconds. AF ON will appear on the display. The radio may switch to stations with a stronger frequency.

To turn alternate frequency off, press and hold BAND again for two seconds. AF OFF will appear on the display. The radio will not switch to other stations.

This function does not apply for XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

## Setting Preset PTYs (RDS Only)

These buttons have factory PTY presets. Up to 12 PTYs (six FM1 and six FM2), can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons, by performing the following steps:

1. Press BAND to select FM1 or FM2.
2. Press the TYPE button to activate program type select mode. TYPE and the last selected PTY will appear on the display.
3. Turn the TYPE knob or press and release the TYPE button to select a PTY.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever that numbered pushbutton is pressed, the PTY that was set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

## RDS Messages

**INFO (Information):** If the current station has a message, the information symbol will appear on the display. Press this button to see the message. The message may display the artist, song title, call in phone numbers, etc.

If the entire message is not displayed, parts of the message will appear every three seconds. To scroll through the message, press and release the INFO button. A new group of words will appear on the display after every press of the button. Once the complete message has been displayed, the information symbol will disappear from the display until another new message is received. The last message can be displayed by pressing the INFO button. You can view the last message until a new message is received or a different station is tuned to.

## Radio Messages

**CAL ERR (Calibration Error):** The audio system has been calibrated for your vehicle from the factory. If CAL ERR appears on the display, it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and must be returned to your GM dealer for service.

**LOCKED:** This message is displayed when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. Take the vehicle to your GM dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly, or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your GM dealer.



## XM™ Radio Messages

Radio Display Message	Condition	Action Required
XL (Explicit Language Channels)	XL on the radio display, after the channel name, indicates content with explicit language.	These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XXXM (9696).
Updating	Updating encryption code	The encryption code in the receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.
No Signal	Loss of signal	The system is functioning correctly, but the vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM signal. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Loading XM	Acquiring channel audio (after 4 second delay)	The audio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.
CH Off Air	Channel not in service	This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel.
CH Unavail	Channel no longer available	This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of the presets, choose another station for that preset button.
No Info	Artist Name/Feature not available	No artist information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
No Info	Song/Program Title not available	No song title information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

## XM™ Radio Messages (cont'd)

Radio Display Message	Condition	Action Required
No Info	Category Name not available	No category information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
No Info	No Text/Informational message available	No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
Not Found	No channel available for the chosen category	There are no channels available for the selected category. The system is working properly.
XM Locked	Theft lock active	The XM receiver in the vehicle may have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this message is received after having your vehicle serviced, check with your GM dealer.
Radio ID	Radio ID label (channel 0)	If tuned to channel 0, this message will alternate with the XM Radio 8 digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.
Unknown	Radio ID not known (should only be if hardware failure)	If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there may be a receiver fault. Consult with your GM dealer.
Chk XM Rcvr	Hardware failure	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver may have a fault. Consult with your GM dealer.

## Playing a Cassette Tape

The tape player is built to work best with tapes that are up to 30 to 45 minutes long on each side. Tapes longer than that are so thin they may not work well in this player. The longer side with the tape visible should face to the right. If you hear nothing or hear a garbled sound, the tape may not be in squarely. Press the eject button to remove the tape and start over.

If the ignition and radio are off, the tape can be inserted, but will not play until the ignition and radio are on. If the ignition is on and the radio is off, the tape can be inserted and will begin playing.

While the tape is playing, use the VOL, AUDIO, and SEEK controls just as you do for the radio. The cassette tape symbol will appear on the display and an arrow showing which side of the tape is playing. The tape player will play the other side of the tape when it reaches the end.

Cassette tape adapter kits for portable CD players will work in the cassette tape player. See “CD Adapter Kits” later for more information.

The tape bias is set automatically when a metal or chrome tape is inserted.

If an error appears on the display, see “Cassette Tape Messages” later in this section.

**1 PREV (Previous):** The tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for previous to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the previous selection on the tape if the current selection has been playing for less than three seconds. If pressed when the current selection has been playing from three to 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the previous selection or the beginning of the current selection, depending on the position on the tape. If pressed when the current selection has been playing for more than 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the current selection.

SEEK and a negative number will appear on the display while the cassette player is in the previous mode. Pressing this pushbutton multiple times will increase the number of selections to be searched back, up to -9.

**2 NEXT:** The tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for next to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the next selection on the tape. Pressing this pushbutton multiple times, in next mode, will increase the number of selections to be searched forward. SEEK and a positive number will appear on the display.

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press this pushbutton to quickly reverse the tape. The radio will play while the tape reverses. Press it again to return to playing speed. The station frequency and REV will appear on the display. Select stations during reverse operation by using TUNE and SEEK.

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press this pushbutton to quickly advance the tape. The radio will play while the tape advances. Press this pushbutton again to return to playing speed. The station frequency and FWD will appear on the display. Select stations during forward operation by using TUNE and SEEK.

**5 SIDE:** Press this pushbutton to play the other side of the tape.

**◀ SEEK ▶ :** The right arrow is the same as the NEXT pushbutton, and the left arrow is the same as the PREV pushbutton. If either arrow is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving forward or backward through the tape. SEEK and a positive or negative number will appear on the display.

**◀ SCAN ▶ :** Press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for more than two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio will go to the next selection, play for 10 seconds, then go on to the next selection. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again, to stop scanning. The tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for scan to work.

**BAND:** Press this button to listen to the radio when a cassette tape or CD is playing. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

**TAPE DISC:** Press this button to play a cassette tape or CD when listening to the radio. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

**△ (Eject):** Press this button to stop and eject a tape when it is playing or to eject a tape when it is not playing. Eject may be activated with the radio off.

## Cassette Tape Messages

**CHK TAPE (Check Tape):** If this message appears on the display, the tape will not play due to one of the following errors:

- The tape is tight and the player cannot turn the tape hubs. Remove the tape. Hold the tape with the open end down and try to turn the right hub counterclockwise with a pencil. Turn the tape over and repeat. If the hubs do not turn easily, the tape may be damaged and should not be used in the player. Try a new tape to make sure your player is working properly.
- The tape is broken. Try a new tape.
- The tape is wrapped around the tape head. Attempt to get the cassette out. Try a new tape.

**CLEAN:** If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but it should be cleaned as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. See *Care of the Cassette Tape Player* on page 247.

If the cassette tape is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good cassette.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your GM dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your GM dealer when reporting the problem.

## CD Adapter Kits

It is possible to use a portable CD player with the cassette tape player after activating the bypass feature on your tape player.

To activate the bypass feature, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Turn the radio off.
3. Press and hold the TAPE DISC button for five seconds. READY will appear on the display and the tape symbol on the display will flash, indicating the feature is active.
4. Insert the adapter into the cassette tape slot. It will power up the radio and begin playing.

The override feature will remain active until the eject button is pressed.

## Playing a CD

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in and the CD should begin playing. If you want to insert a CD with the ignition off, first press the eject button or the INFO knob.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with the CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

When a CD is inserted, the CD symbol will appear on the display. As each new track starts to play, the track number will appear on the display.

The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see *Care of Your CDs and DVDs on page 249* for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen instead.

**Notice:** If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player. When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

**1 PREV (Previous):** Press this pushbutton to go to the beginning of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If this pushbutton is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving backward through the CD.

**2 NEXT:** Press this pushbutton to go to the next track. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If this pushbutton is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the CD.

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press and hold this pushbutton to quickly reverse within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to reverse at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to reverse at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release this pushbutton to play the passage. ET and the elapsed time of the track will appear on the display.

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press and hold this pushbutton to quickly advance within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to advance at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to advance at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release this pushbutton to play the passage. ET and the elapsed time of the track will appear on the display.

**6 RDM (Random):** Press this pushbutton to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ON will appear on the display. RDM T and the track number will appear on the display when each track starts to play. Press this pushbutton again to turn off random play. RDM OFF will appear on the display.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ : Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current or to the previous track. Press the right arrow to go to the start of the next track. If either arrow is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving backward or forward through the CD.

◀ **SCAN** ▶ : Press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for more than two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio will go to the next track, play for 10 seconds, then go on to the next track. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again, to stop scanning.

**INFO (Information):** Press this knob to see how long the current track has been playing. ET and the elapsed time will appear on the display. To change the default on the display, track or elapsed time, press the knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob for two seconds. The radio will produce one beep and the selected display will now be the default.

**BAND:** Press this button to listen to the radio when a cassette tape or CD is playing. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

**TAPE DISC:** Press this button to play a cassette tape or CD when listening to the radio. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

△ (**Eject**): Press this button to stop and eject a CD when it is playing or to eject a CD when it is not playing. Eject may be activated with either the ignition or radio off. CDs may be loaded with the radio and ignition off if this button is pressed first.



## CD Messages

If the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your GM dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your GM dealer when reporting the problem.

## Navigation/Radio System

Your vehicle may have a navigation radio system.

The navigation system has built-in features intended to minimize driver distraction. Technology alone, no matter how advanced, can never replace your own judgment. See the Navigation System manual for some tips to help you reduce distractions while driving.

## Rear Seat Entertainment System

Your vehicle may have a DVD Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system. The RSE system includes a DVD player, a video display screen, two sets of wireless headphones, and a remote control.

## Parental Control

This button is located behind the video screen. Press this button while a DVD or CD is playing to freeze the video and mute the audio. The video screen will display Parental Control ON and the power indicator light on the DVD player will flash. It will also disable all other button operations from the remote control and the DVD player, with the exception of the eject button. Press this button again to restore operation of the DVD player.

This button may also be used to turn the DVD player power on and automatically resume play if the ignition is in RUN, ACCESSORY, or if RAP is active.

## Before You Drive

The RSE system is for rear seat passengers only. The driver cannot safely view the video screen while driving and should not try to do so.

## Headphones

The RSE system includes two sets of wireless headphones.

Each set of headphones has an ON/OFF control. An indicator light will illuminate on the headphones when they are on. If the light does not illuminate, the batteries may need to be replaced. See "Battery Replacement" following for more information.

Each set of headphones has a volume knob. To adjust the volume, adjust this knob.

The transmitters are located below the video display screen. The headphones will shut off automatically if they lose the signal from the system after about four minutes to save battery power. The signal may be lost if the system is turned off or if the headphones are out of range of the transmitters.

When using the wired headphones, if the front seat passengers play a CD in the Radio with Six-Disc CD (if equipped) or use XM™ Satellite Radio Service (if equipped), you will hear the audio for these sources, instead of the DVD or CD that is currently playing through the RSE.

***Notice:*** Do not store the headphones in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the headphones and repairs will not be covered by your warranty. Keep the headphones stored in a cool, dry place.

Both sets of rear seat headphones may include foam ear pads that can be replaced.

Foam ear pads on these headphones may become worn or damaged. The headphone foam ear pads can become damaged if they are not handled or stored properly. If the foam ear pads do become damaged or worn out, the pads can be replaced separately from the headphone set. It is not necessary to replace the complete headphone set.

The headphone replacement foam ear pads can be ordered in pairs. See your dealer for more information.

## **Battery Replacement**

To change the batteries, do the following:

1. Loosen the screw on the battery compartment door located on the left side of the headphone earpiece.
2. Replace the two AAA batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly, using the diagram on the inside of the battery compartment.
3. Tighten the screw to close the compartment door.

If the headphones are to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

## Stereo RCA Jacks

The RCA jacks are located behind the video screen. The RCA jacks allow audio and video signals to be connected from an auxiliary device such as a camcorder or a video game unit to the RSE system. Standard RCA cables, not included, are needed to connect the auxiliary device to the RCA jacks. The yellow connector inputs video and the red and white connectors input right and left audio. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper connection of the auxiliary device.

To use the auxiliary inputs on the RSE system, connect an external auxiliary device to the color-coded RCA jacks and turn both the auxiliary device and the RSE system power on. If the RSE system had been previously in the DVD player mode, pressing the SRCE button on the faceplate or the remote control will switch the RSE system between the auxiliary device and the DVD player.

## How to Change the Video Format when in the Auxiliary Mode

The auxiliary input video format is preset to NTSC. In some countries, the video format may be in the PAL system. To change the video format, perform the following:

1. Press the display menu button.
2. Press the down arrow button to highlight the Video Format option.
3. Press the enter button to select Video Format.
4. Press the right or left arrow button to select the desired video format.
5. Press the enter button to accept the change.

## Audio Output

Audio from the DVD player or auxiliary inputs may be heard through the following possible sources:

- Wireless Headphones
- Vehicle Speakers
- Vehicle wired headphone jacks on the Rear Seat Audio system (if equipped)

The RSE system will always transmit the audio signal by infrared to the wireless headphones, if there is audio available. See “Headphones” previously for more information.

The RSE system is capable of outputting audio to the vehicle speakers by using the radio. The RSE system may be selected as an audio source on the radio if the RSE system power is on. Once the RSE system is selected as an audio source on the radio, adjust the speaker volume on the radio, if necessary. If the RSE system power is not on, the RSE system will not be an available source on the radio. Refer to the radio information for the radio that your vehicle has for more information.

The RSE system is capable of outputting audio to the wired headphone jacks on the rear seat audio system (if equipped). The RSE system may be selected as an audio source on the rear seat audio system if the RSE system power is on. Refer to *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) on page 239* for more information.

## Video Screen

The video screen is located in the overhead console. To use the video screen, push forward on the release latch and the screen will fold down. Adjust the screen's position as desired. When the video screen is not in use, push it up into its latched position.

The DVD player and display will continue to operate when the screen is in the up or the down position. The video screen contains the transmitters for the wireless headphones and the remote control. If the screen is in the closed position, the signals will not be available for the operation of the headphones or the remote control.

**Notice:** Avoid directly touching the video screen, as damage may occur. See “Cleaning the Video Screen” later in this section for more information.

## DVD Player

The DVD player is located in the overhead console. The DVD player can be controlled by the buttons on the DVD player and/or by the buttons on the remote control. See “Remote Control” later in this section for more information.

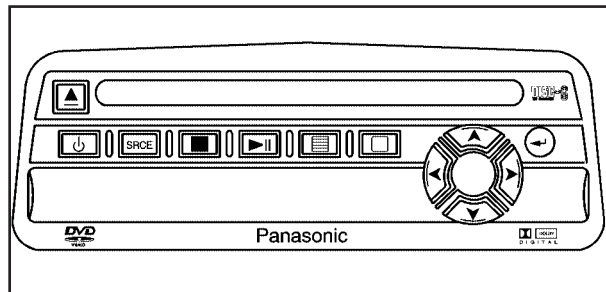
The DVD player power may be turned on when the ignition is in RUN, ACCESSORY, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active.

The RSE system DVD player is only compatible with DVDs of the appropriate region code for the country that the vehicle was sold in. The DVD region code is printed on the jacket of most DVDs.

Standard audio CDs, CD-R, CD-RW, Video CD and Photo CD/CD-R media are fully supported by this DVD player. DVD-R and DVD-RW media is supported if formatted as DVD-Video. DVD+R and DVD+RW media may or may not be supported by the DVD player. The DVD player does not support DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, and DVD Audio media. An error message will appear on the display if this type of media is inserted into the DVD player.


When using the wired headphones, not included, if the front seat passengers play a CD in the Radio with Six-Disc CD (if equipped) or use XM™ Satellite Radio Service (if equipped), you will hear the audio for these sources, instead of the DVD or CD that is currently playing through the RSE.

If an error message appears on the video screen, see “DVD Messages” later in this section.





### DVD Player Buttons


**⏻ (Power):** Press this button to turn the RSE system on and off. The power indicator light will illuminate when the power is on.


 **(Eject):** Press this button to eject a DVD or CD.

**SRCE (Source):** Press this button to switch between the DVD player and an auxiliary source.

 **(Stop):** Press this button to stop playing, rewinding, or fast forwarding a DVD or CD. Press this button twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.


 **(Play/Pause):** Press this button to start play of a DVD or CD. Press this button while a DVD or CD is playing to pause it. Press this button again to continue the play of the DVD or CD.


 **(Main DVD Menu):** Press this button to access the DVD menu. The DVD menu is different on every DVD. Use the up, down, left, and right arrow buttons to move the cursor around the DVD menu. After making a selection press the enter button. This button only operates when playing a DVD.

 **(Set-up Menu):** Press this button to adjust the color, tint, brightness, contrast, display mode, and dynamic range compression. The dynamic range compression feature can be used to reduce loud audio and increase low audio produced by some DVDs.

To change a feature back to the factory default setting, press this button to display the feature, then press and hold this button. The default setting will appear on the display.

While playing an Audio or DVD disc, press and hold this button to display and to remove the track and time information.

 **(Menu Navigation Arrows):** Use the arrow buttons to navigate through a menu.

 **(Enter):** Press this button to select the choices that are highlighted in any menu.

## **Playing a Disc**

To play a disc, gently insert the disc with the label side up into the loading slot. The DVD player will continue loading the disc and the player will automatically start, if the vehicle is in RUN, ACCESSORY, or when RAP is active.

If a disc is already in the player, press the play/pause button on the DVD player faceplate or on the remote control.

Some DVDs will not allow fast forwarding or skipping of the copyright information or the previews. Some DVDs will begin playing after the previews have finished. If the DVD does not begin to play the main title, refer to the on-screen instructions.

## **Stopping and Resuming Playback**

To stop playing a disc, press and release the stop button on the DVD player faceplate or the remote control.

To resume playback, press the play/pause button on the DVD player faceplate or the remote control. The movie should resume play from where it was last stopped, if the disc has not been ejected and the stop button has not been pressed twice. If the disc has been ejected or if the stop button has been pressed twice, the disc will resume play at the beginning.

## **Ejecting a Disc**

Press the eject button on the DVD player faceplate to eject the disc. There is not an eject button on the remote control.

If a disc is ejected from the player, but is not removed, the DVD player will reload the disc after a short period of time. The disc will be stored in the DVD player. The DVD player will not resume play of the disc automatically.



## Remote Control

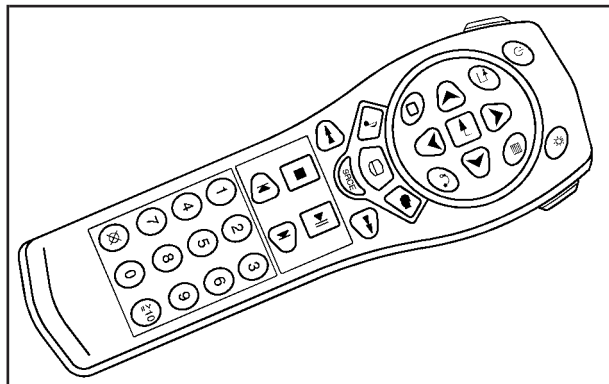
To use the remote control, aim it at the transmitter window below the video screen and press the desired button. Direct sunlight or very bright light may affect the ability of the RSE system to receive signals from the remote control. If the remote control does not seem to be working, the batteries may need to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.


Objects blocking the line of sight may also affect the function of the remote control.

**Notice:** Storing the remote control in a hot area or in direct sunlight may damage it, and the repairs will not be covered by your warranty. Keep the remote control stored in a cool, dry place.

To extend the life of the batteries, the remote control does not have a press and hold feature.

## Remote Control Buttons



 **(Power):** Press this button to turn the DVD player on and off.

 **(Title):** Press this button to return the DVD to the main menu of the DVD.

 **(Menu Navigation Arrows):** Use the arrow buttons to navigate through a menu.

□ **(Set-up Menu):** Press this button to adjust the color, tint, brightness, contrast, display mode, and dynamic range compression. The dynamic range compression feature can be used to reduce loud audio and increase low audio produced by some DVDs.

♪ **(Audio):** Press this button to display a menu that will only appear when a DVD is being played. The format and content of this function will vary for each disc.

◀◀ **(Fast Reverse):** Press this button to fast reverse the DVD or CD. To stop fast reversing, press this button again. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

SRCE **(Source):** Press this button to switch between the DVD player and an auxiliary source.

■ **(Stop):** Press this button to stop playing, rewinding, or fast forwarding a DVD or CD. Press this button twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.


◀ **(Previous Track/Chapter):** Press this button to return to the start of the current track or chapter. Press this button again to return to the previous track or chapter. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.


**1 through 0 (Numeric Keypad):** The numeric keypad provides you with the capability of direct chapter, title, and track number selection.


≥ **10 (Double Digit Entries):** Press this button to select chapter, title, and track numbers greater than 9. Press this button before inputting the number.


⊗ **(Clear):** Press this button within three seconds after inputting a number to clear the number(s).


☀ **(Illumination):** Press this button to turn the remote control backlight on. The backlight will time out after about 7 to 10 seconds if no other button is pressed while the backlight is on.


 **(Main DVD Menu):** Press this button to access the DVD menu. The DVD menu is different on every DVD. Use the up, down, left, and right arrow buttons to move the cursor around the DVD menu. After making a selection press the enter button. This button only operates when playing a DVD.


 **(Enter):** Press this button to select the choices that are highlighted in any menu.

 **(Return):** Press this button to exit the current active menu and return to the previous menu. This button will operate only when a DVD is playing and a menu is active.


 **(Camera Angle):** Press this button to change camera angles on DVDs that have this feature when a DVD is playing. The format and content of this function will vary for each disc.

 **(Subtitle):** Press this button to turn on subtitles and to move through subtitle options when a DVD is playing. The format and content of this function will vary for each disc.

 **(Fast Forward):** Press this button to fast forward the DVD or CD. To stop fast forwarding, press this button again. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

 **(Play/Pause):** Press this button to start play of a DVD or CD. Press this button while a DVD or CD is playing to pause it. Press this button again to continue the play of the DVD or CD.

When the DVD is playing, press the pause button then press the fast forward button. The DVD will continue playing in a slow play mode. To cancel slow play mode, press the play/pause button.

 **(Next Track/Chapter):** Press this button to advance to the beginning of the next track or chapter. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

## Battery Replacement

To change the batteries, do the following:

1. Remove the battery compartment door located on the bottom of the remote control.
2. Replace the two AA batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly, using the diagram on the inside of the battery compartment.
3. Close the battery door securely.

If the remote control is to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

Problem	Recommended Action
No power.	The ignition might not be in on or accessory. The parental control button might have been turned on. The power indicator light will flash.
Disc will not play.	The system might be off. The parental control button might have been turned on. The power indicator light will flash. The system might be in auxiliary mode. The disc is upside down or is not compatible.
The picture does not fill the screen. There are black borders on the top and bottom or on both sides or it looks stretched out.	Check the display mode settings in the display menu.
The disc was ejected, but it was pulled back into the DVD player.	The disc is being stored in the DVD player. Press the eject button again to eject the disc.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Recommended Action</b>
In auxiliary mode, the picture moves or scrolls.	Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices. Change the Video Format to PAL or NTSC. See "Stereo RCA Jacks" previously for how to change the video format.
The language in the audio or on the screen is wrong.	Check the audio or language selection in the main DVD menu.
The remote control does not work.	Check to make sure there is no obstruction between the remote control and the transmitter window. Check the batteries to make sure they are not dead or installed incorrectly. The parental control button might have been turned on. The power indicator light will flash.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Recommended Action</b>
After stopping the player, I push Play but sometimes the DVD starts where I left off and sometimes at the beginning.	If the stop button was pressed one time, the DVD player will resume playing where the DVD was stopped. If the stop button was pressed two times the DVD player will begin to play from the beginning of the DVD.
The auxiliary source is running but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the DVD player is in the auxiliary source mode. Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices.
My disc is stuck in the player. The Load/Eject button does not work.	Turn the DVD power off, then on, then press the load/eject button on the DVD player. Do not attempt to forcibly remove the disc from the DVD player. This could permanently damage the disc and DVD player.

Problem	Recommended Action
Sometimes the wireless headphone audio cuts out or buzzes.	Check for obstructions, low batteries, reception range, and interference from cellular telephone towers or by using your cellular telephone in the vehicle. Check that the headphones are facing the front of the vehicle.
I lost the remote and/or the headphones.	See your dealer for assistance.
The DVD is playing, but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the DVD player is in DVD mode.
The audio/video skips or jumps.	The DVD or CD could be dirty, scratched, or damaged.
The audio from the radio for the Radio with Six-Disc CD and XM™ has taken over the audio from the DVD or CD when using the wired headphones.	The RSE is working correctly. Use the wireless headphones or have the front seat passengers listen to another audio source.

## DVD Messages

The following errors may be displayed on the video screen:

**Disc Format Error:** This message will be displayed if a disc is inserted upside down, if the disc is not readable, or if the format is not compatible with the DVD player.

**Load/Eject Error:** This message will be displayed if the disc is not properly loaded or ejected.

**Disc Play Error:** This message will be displayed if the DVD player cannot play the disc. Scratched or damaged discs will cause this error.

**Region Code Error:** This message will be displayed if the region code of the DVD is not compatible with the region code of the DVD player.

**No Disc:** This message will be displayed if any of the buttons on the DVD faceplate or remote control are pressed and no disc is present in the DVD player.

## DVD Distortion

There may be an experience with audio distortion in the wireless headphones when operating cellular phones, scanners, CB radios, Global Positioning Systems (GPS)\*, two-way radios, mobile fax, or walkie talkies.

It may be necessary to turn off the DVD player when operating one of these devices in or near the vehicle.

\* Excludes the OnStar® System.

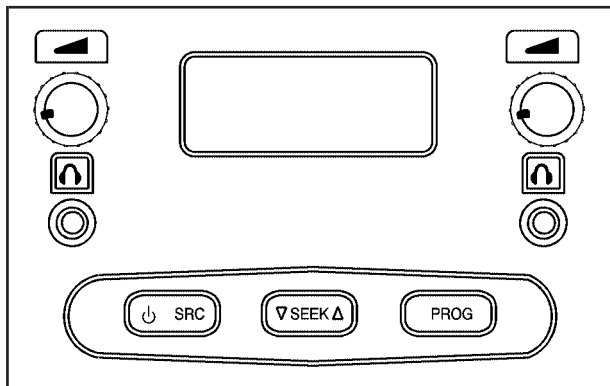
## Cleaning the Video Screen

Pour some isopropyl or rubbing alcohol on a clean cloth and gently wipe the video screen. Do not spray directly onto the screen and do not press too hard or too long on the video screen.

## Rear Seat Audio (RSA)

This feature allows rear seat passengers to listen to any of the sources: radio, cassette tapes, CDs, or DVDs. However, the rear seat passengers can only control the sources that the front seat passengers are not listening to. For example, rear seat passengers may listen to and control cassette tapes, CDs, or DVDs through the headphones while the driver listens to the radio through the front speakers. The rear seat passengers have control of the volume for each set of headphones.

The front seat audio controls always have priority over the RSA controls. If the front seat passengers switch the source for the main radio to a remote source, the RSA will not be able to control the source. You can operate the rear seat audio when the main radio is off.



**⏻ (Power):** Press this button to turn the system on or off. The rear speakers will be muted when the power is turned on unless your vehicle is equipped with the Bose® audio system.

**◀ (Volume):** Turn this knob to increase or to decrease the volume. The left knob controls the left headphones and the right knob controls the right headphones.

**SRC (Source):** Press this button to select a source: radio, cassette tapes, CDs, or DVDs.

**▽ SEEK △:** When listening to FM1, FM2, or AM, press the up or the down arrow to go to the next or to the previous station and stay there. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

When a cassette tape is playing, press the up or the down arrow to go to the next or the previous selection. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a cassette tape.

When a CD is playing, press the up arrow to go to the next track on the CD. Press the down arrow to go to the start of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a CD.



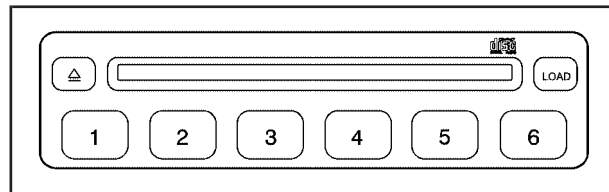
**PROG (Program):** Press this button to go to the next preset radio station set on the pushbuttons on the main radio. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

When a cassette tape is playing, press this button to go to the other side of the tape. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a cassette tape.

When a CD is playing, press this button to go to the beginning of the CD. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a CD.

When a CD is playing in the six-disc CD changer, press this button to select the next CD, if multiple CDs are loaded. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a CD.

## CD Changer



The CD changer plays up to six standard size CDs continuously. Individual CDs may be loaded or ejected into or from any position.

An amber light on each numbered button indicates a CD is loaded in the respective position. A green light on a numbered button indicates that a CD is playing. When loading CDs, the loading slot indicators turn green to indicate that the player is ready to accept a CD. CDs can be loaded or ejected with the radio or the ignition off.

You must load CDs with the label side up. If you do not, the player will automatically eject the CDs.

**Notice: Loading CDs with adhesive labels will damage the player.**

To load a CD, perform the following steps:

1. Press the LOAD button. Available positions will blink green.
2. Select a position by pressing the numbered button with the green blinking light. If a button is not pressed within five seconds, the changer will go to the lowest available position.
3. Load the CD when the loading slot indicators turn green. An internal door will open allowing a single CD to be inserted into the changer. After approximately 10 seconds the changer will be ready to play.

To load two or more CDs, perform the following steps:

1. Press and hold the LOAD button. The first CD will be loaded into the lowest numbered empty position.
2. Load a single CD when the loading slot indicators turn green. After about 10 seconds the changer will cycle to the next available position.

3. Repeat Step 2 until all CDs are loaded into all of the desired positions. If you do not wish to load all of the positions, cancel loading by pressing and releasing the load button or wait 25 seconds for the changer to time out.

To eject a single CD, perform the following steps:

1. Press the eject button (upward pointing arrow). The buttons with loaded CDs will blink green.
2. Press one of the green blinking buttons to select the location of the CD you want to eject. The changer will move to that location and eject the CD. If you do not remove the CD from the player within 25 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the eject button is pressed and a numbered location button is not pressed within five seconds, the current or last played CD will be ejected.

To eject all CDs, press and hold the eject button.

To play a CD, perform one of the following:

- With the radio on, press the numbered button with an amber indicator light on the CD changer.
- Press the TAPE/DISC button on the radio. The CD changer will go to its last played position.

## CD Functions


All of the CD changer functions are performed by the radio, except for loading and ejecting.

**1 PREV (Previous):** Press this pushbutton to go to beginning of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. If this pushbutton is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving backward through the CD.

**2 NEXT:** Press this pushbutton to go to the next track. If this pushbutton is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the CD.

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press and hold this pushbutton to reverse quickly within a track. Release it to play the passage. The elapsed time of the track will appear on the display.

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press and hold this pushbutton to advance quickly within a track. Release it to play the passage. The elapsed time of the track will appear on the display.

**5  SIDE:** Press this pushbutton to select a CD. The CD number and track number will appear on the display.

**6 RDM (Random):** Press and release this pushbutton to hear all of the tracks on all of the loaded CDs in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ALL will appear on the display.

Press and hold this pushbutton to hear the tracks on the current CD in random, rather than sequential order. You will hear a beep and RDM ONE will appear on the display. Press this pushbutton again to turn off random play. RDM OFF will appear on the display.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ : Press the right or the left arrow to go to the next or to the previous track on the CD.

◀ **SCAN** ▶ : Press and hold either arrow for more than two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio will go to the next track, play for 10 seconds, then go on to the next track. Press either SCAN arrow again to stop scanning.

**BAND**: Press this button to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The inactive CD(s) will remain safely inside the player for future listening.

**TAPE DISC**: Press this button to play a CD, if a CD is loaded in the changer and the radio is on.

Press this button to switch between playing a tape and a CD in the CD changer, if both are loaded.

## CD Changer Errors

**CHK CD (Check)**: If this message appears on the display, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.
- The CD player is very hot.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your GM dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your GM dealer when reporting the problem.

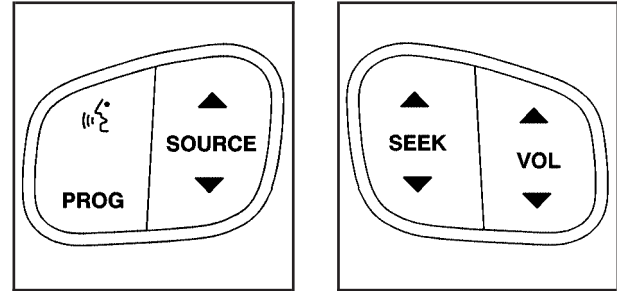
## Theft-Deterrent Feature

THEFTLOCK<sup>®</sup> is designed to discourage theft of your vehicle's radio. The feature works automatically by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). If the radio is moved to a different vehicle, it will not operate and LOCKED will appear on the display.

When the radio and vehicle are turned off, the blinking red light indicates that THEFTLOCK<sup>®</sup> is armed.

With THEFTLOCK<sup>®</sup> activated, the radio will not operate if stolen.

## Audio Steering Wheel Controls



If your vehicle has this feature, some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel. They include the following:

**☎ (OnStar<sup>®</sup>/Mute):** If your vehicle has OnStar, press this button to interact with the OnStar system. See the *OnStar<sup>®</sup> System on page 122* in this manual for more information.

If your vehicle does not have OnStar, press this button to silence the system. Press it again, or any other radio button, to turn on the sound.

**PROG (Program):** Press this button to play a station you have programmed on the radio preset pushbuttons. The radio will only seek preset stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

When a cassette tape is playing, press this button to play the other side of the tape.

When a CD is playing in the CD changer, press this button to go to the next available CD, if multiple CDs are loaded.

▲ **SOURCE ▼**: Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped), or a cassette tape or CD. The cassette or CD must be loaded to play. Available loaded sources are shown on the display as a tape or a CD symbol.

▲ **SEEK ▼**: Press the up or the down arrow to go to the next or to the previous radio station and stay there. The radio will only seek stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

When a cassette tape or CD is playing, press the up or the down arrow to fast forward or reverse.

▲ **VOL ▼ (Volume)**: Press the up or the down arrow to increase or to decrease the volume.

## Radio Reception

You may experience frequency interference and static during normal radio reception if items such as cellphone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

### AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations will boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on your radio.

### FM Stereo

FM stereo will give the best sound, but FM signals will reach only about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Tall buildings or hills can interfere with FM signals, causing the sound to fade in and out.

## **XM™ Satellite Radio Service**

XM™ Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast-to-coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the XM™ signal for a period of time. The radio may display NO SIGNAL to indicate interference.

## **Care of the Cassette Tape Player**

A tape player that is not cleaned regularly can cause reduced sound quality, ruined cassettes, or a damaged mechanism. Cassette tapes should be stored in their cases away from contaminants, direct sunlight, and extreme heat. If they are not, they may not operate properly or may cause failure of the tape player.

The tape player should be cleaned regularly after every 50 hours of use. The radio may display CLN to indicate that the tape player has been used for 50 hours without resetting the tape clean timer. If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but it should be cleaned as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. If there is a reduction in sound quality, try a known good cassette to see if the tape or the tape player is at fault. If this other cassette has no improvement in sound quality, clean the tape player.

For best results, use a scrubbing action, non-abrasive cleaning cassette with pads which scrub the tape head as the hubs of the cleaner cassette turn. The recommended cleaning cassette is available through your dealer.

The cut tape detection feature of the cassette tape player may identify the cleaning cassette as a damaged tape, in error. To prevent the cleaning cassette from being ejected, use the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Turn the radio off.
3. Press and hold the TAPE/DISC button for five seconds. The tape symbol on the display will flash for two seconds.
4. Insert the scrubbing action cleaning cassette.
5. Eject the cleaning cassette after the manufacturer's recommended cleaning time.  
After the cleaning cassette is ejected, the cut tape detection feature will be active again.

A non-scrubbing action, wet-type cleaner which uses a cassette with a fabric belt to clean the tape head can be used. This type of cleaning cassette will not eject on its own. A non-scrubbing action cleaner may not clean as thoroughly as the scrubbing type cleaner. The use of a non-scrubbing action, dry-type cleaning cassette is not recommended.

After the player is cleaned, press and hold the EJECT button for five seconds to reset the CLN indicator. The radio will display --- or CLEANED to show the indicator was reset.

Cassettes are subject to wear and the sound quality may degrade over time. Always make sure the cassette tape is in good condition before the tape player is serviced.



## Care of Your CDs and DVDs

Handle CDs carefully. Store them in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The CD player scans the bottom surface of the disc. If the surface of a CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly or not at all. If the surface of a CD is soiled, take a soft, lint free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

Do not touch the bottom side of a CD while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up CDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

## Care of the CD and DVD Player

The use of CD lens cleaners for CDs is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD mechanism.

## Fixed Mast Antenna

The fixed mast antenna can withstand most car washes without being damaged. If the mast should ever become slightly bent, straighten it out by hand. If the mast is badly bent, replace it.

Check occasionally to make sure the mast is still tightened to its base. If tightening is required, tighten by hand, then with a wrench one quarter turn.

## **XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System**

The XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of your vehicle. Keep this antenna clear of snow and ice build up for clear radio reception.

If your vehicle has a sunroof, the performance of the XM™ system may be affected if the sunroof is open.

Loading items onto the roof of your vehicle can interfere with the performance of the XM™ system. Make sure the XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is not obstructed.

## **Chime Level Adjustment**

The radio is used to adjust the vehicle's chime level. To change the volume level of the chime, press and hold pushbutton 6 with the ignition on and the radio power off. The volume level will change from the normal level to loud, and **LOUD** will appear on the radio display. To change back to the default or normal setting, press and hold pushbutton 6 again. The volume level will change from the loud level to normal, and **NORMAL** will appear on the radio display. Each time the chime volume is changed, three chimes will sound to indicate the new volume selected. Removing the radio and not replacing it with a factory radio or chime module will disable vehicle chimes.

## Section 4 Driving Your Vehicle

---

### Your Driving, the Road, and

<b>Your Vehicle</b> .....	252
Defensive Driving .....	252
Drunken Driving .....	253
Control of a Vehicle .....	256
Braking .....	256
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) .....	257
Braking in Emergencies .....	259
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System .....	259
Steering .....	259
Off-Road Recovery .....	261
Passing .....	262
Loss of Control .....	264
Off-Road Driving .....	265
Driving at Night .....	279
Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads .....	280
City Driving .....	284

Freeway Driving .....	285
Before Leaving on a Long Trip .....	286
Highway Hypnosis .....	287
Hill and Mountain Roads .....	288
Winter Driving .....	290
If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow .....	294
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out .....	294
Recovery Hooks .....	295
Loading Your Vehicle .....	296
Truck-Camper Loading Information .....	302
Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab .....	302
<b>Towing</b> .....	303
Towing Your Vehicle .....	303
Recreational Vehicle Towing .....	303
Towing a Trailer .....	304
Trailer Recommendations .....	319

# Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle

## Defensive Driving

The best advice anyone can give about driving is: Drive defensively.

Please start with a very important safety device in your vehicle: Buckle up. See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone* on page 16.

### CAUTION:

Defensive driving really means “Be ready for anything.” On city streets, rural roads, or expressways, it means “Always expect the unexpected.” Assume that pedestrians or other drivers are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. Rear-end collisions are about the most preventable of accidents. Yet they are common. Allow enough following distance. Defensive driving requires that a driver concentrate on the driving task. Anything that distracts from the driving task makes proper defensive driving more difficult and can even cause a collision, with resulting injury. Ask a passenger to help do these things, or pull off the road in a safe place to do them. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

## Drunken Driving

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a national tragedy. It is the number one contributor to the highway death toll, claiming thousands of victims every year.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle:

- Judgment
- Muscular Coordination
- Vision
- Attentiveness

Police records show that almost half of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 16,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with more than 300,000 people injured.

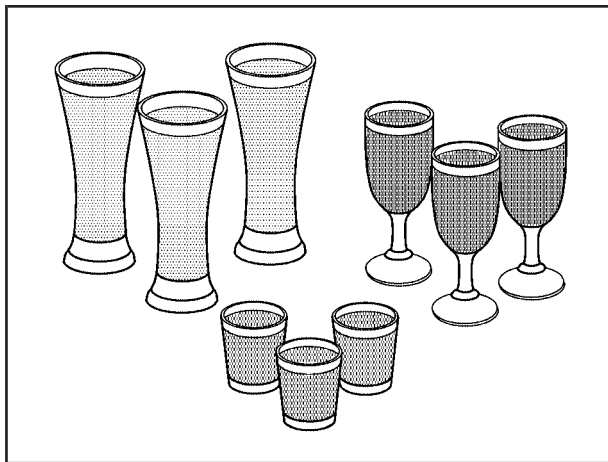
Many adults — by some estimates, nearly half the adult population — choose never to drink alcohol, so they never drive after drinking. For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological, and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive. But what if people do? How much is “too much” if someone plans to drive? It is a lot less than many might think. Although it depends on each person and situation, here is some general information on the problem.

The Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) of someone who is drinking depends upon four things:

- The amount of alcohol consumed
- The drinker’s body weight
- The amount of food that is consumed before and during drinking
- The length of time it has taken the drinker to consume the alcohol

According to the American Medical Association, a 180 lb (82 kg) person who drinks three 12 ounce (355 ml) bottles of beer in an hour will end up with a BAC of about 0.06 percent. The person would reach the same BAC by drinking three 4 ounce (120 ml) glasses of wine or three mixed drinks if each had 1-1/2 ounces (45 ml) of liquors like whiskey, gin, or vodka.



It is the amount of alcohol that counts. For example, if the same person drank three double martinis (3 ounces or 90 ml of liquor each) within an hour, the person's BAC would be close to 0.12 percent. A person who consumes food just before or during drinking will have a somewhat lower BAC level.

There is a gender difference, too. Women generally have a lower relative percentage of body water than men. Since alcohol is carried in body water, this means that a woman generally will reach a higher BAC level than a man of her same body weight will when each has the same number of drinks.

The law in most U.S. states, and throughout Canada, sets the legal limit at 0.08 percent. In some other countries, the limit is even lower. For example, it is 0.05 percent in both France and Germany. The BAC limit for all commercial drivers in the United States is 0.04 percent.

The BAC will be over 0.10 percent after three to six drinks (in one hour). Of course, as we have seen, it depends on how much alcohol is in the drinks, and how quickly the person drinks them.

But the ability to drive is affected well below a BAC of 0.10 percent. Research shows that the driving skills of many people are impaired at a BAC approaching 0.05 percent, and that the effects are worse at night. All drivers are impaired at BAC levels above 0.05 percent. Statistics show that the chance of being in a collision increases sharply for drivers who have a BAC of 0.05 percent or above. A driver with a BAC level of 0.06 percent has doubled his or her chance of having a collision. At a BAC level of 0.10 percent, the chance of this driver having a collision is 12 times greater; at a level of 0.15 percent, the chance is 25 times greater!

The body takes about an hour to rid itself of the alcohol in one drink. No amount of coffee or number of cold showers will speed that up. “I will be careful” is not the right answer. What if there is an emergency, a need to take sudden action, as when a child darts into the street? A person with even a moderate BAC might not be able to react quickly enough to avoid the collision.

There is something else about drinking and driving that many people do not know. Medical research shows that alcohol in a person’s system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person’s chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

 **CAUTION:**

**Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Please do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.**

## Control of a Vehicle

You have three systems that make your vehicle go where you want it to go. They are the brakes, the steering, and the accelerator. All three systems have to do their work at the places where the tires meet the road.

Sometimes, as when you are driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. That means you can lose control of your vehicle.

Adding non-GM accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 324*.

## Braking

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 176*.

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time.

First, you have to decide to push on the brake pedal. That is perception time. Then you have to bring up your foot and do it. That is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination, and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs, and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between your vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road, whether it is pavement or gravel; the condition of the road, whether it is wet, dry, or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; and the amount of brake force applied.



Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. The brakes may not have time to cool between hard stops. The brakes will wear out much faster if you do a lot of heavy braking. If you keep pace with the traffic and allow realistic following distances, you will eliminate a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

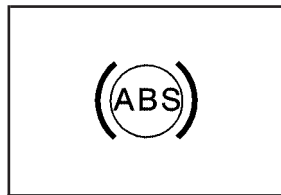
If your vehicle's engine ever stops while you are driving, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If you do, the pedal may get harder to push down. If the engine stops, you will still have some power brake assist. But you will use it when you brake. Once the power assist is used up, it may take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Adding non-GM accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 324*.

## Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

Your vehicle has the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that will help prevent a braking skid.

When you start your engine and begin to drive away, ABS will check itself. You may hear a momentary motor or clicking noise while this test is going on. This is normal.



If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light will stay on. See *Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light on page 177*.

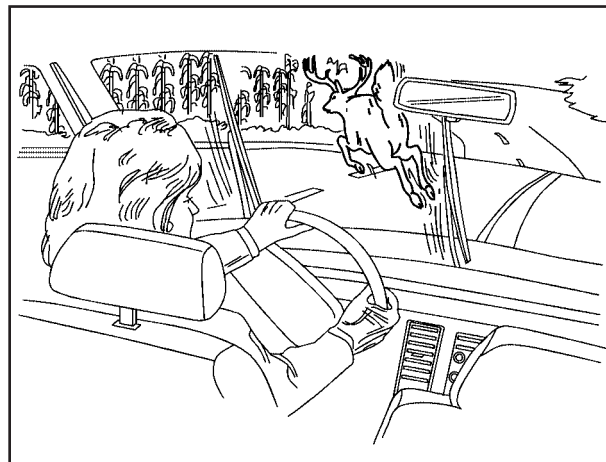
Along with ABS, your vehicle has a Dynamic Rear Proportioning (DRP) system. If there is a DRP problem, both the brake and ABS warning lights will come on accompanied by a 10-second chime. The lights and chime will come on each time the ignition is turned on until the problem is repaired. See your dealer for service.



Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

ABS can change the brake pressure faster than any driver could. The computer is programmed to make the most of available tire and road conditions. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.



As you brake, your computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time you need to get your foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, you will not have time to apply your brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even though you have ABS.

### **Using ABS**

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let anti-lock work for you. You may feel the brakes vibrate, or you may notice some noise, but this is normal.

### **Braking in Emergencies**

With ABS, you can steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help you more than even the very best braking.

### **All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System**

With this feature, engine power is sent to all four wheels all the time.

This is like four-wheel drive, but there is no separate lever or switch to engage or disengage the front axle. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

## **Steering**

### **Power Steering**

If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system is not functioning, you can steer but it will take much more effort.

### **Steering Tips**

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

A lot of the “driver lost control” accidents mentioned on the news happen on curves. Here is why:

Experienced driver or beginner, each of us is subject to the same laws of physics when driving on curves. The traction of the tires against the road surface makes it possible for the vehicle to change its path when you turn the front wheels. If there is no traction, inertia will keep the vehicle going in the same direction. If you have ever tried to steer a vehicle on wet ice, you will understand this.

The traction you can get in a curve depends on the condition of your tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and your speed. While you are in a curve, speed is the one factor you can control.

Suppose you are steering through a sharp curve. Then you suddenly accelerate. Both control systems — steering and acceleration — have to do their work where the tires meet the road. Adding the sudden acceleration can demand too much of those places. You can lose control.

What should you do if this ever happens? Ease up on the accelerator pedal, steer the vehicle the way you want it to go, and slow down.

Speed limit signs near curves warn that you should adjust your speed. Of course, the posted speeds are based on good weather and road conditions. Under less favorable conditions you will want to go slower.

If you need to reduce your speed as you approach a curve, do it before you enter the curve, while your front wheels are straight ahead.

Try to adjust your speed so you can “drive” through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until you are out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

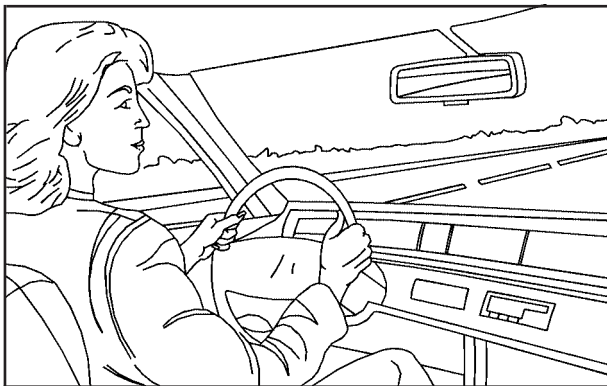
Adding non-GM accessories can affect your vehicle’s performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 324*.

## Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. You can avoid these problems by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot; there is not room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

Your vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply your brakes.

See *Braking on page 256*. It is better to remove as much speed as you can from a possible collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.

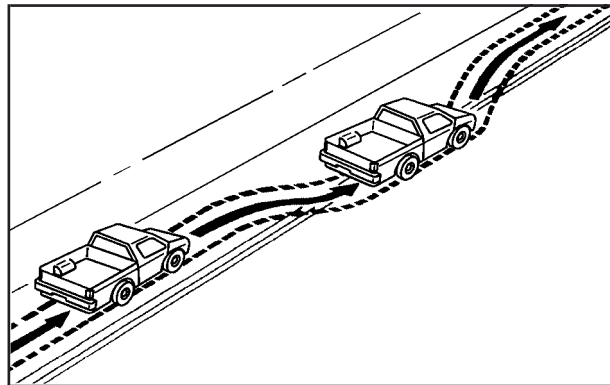


An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If you are holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, you can turn it a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

## Off-Road Recovery

You may find that your right wheels have dropped off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while you are driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that your vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. You can turn the steering wheel up to one-quarter turn until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn your steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

## Passing

The driver of a vehicle about to pass another on a two-lane highway waits for just the right moment, accelerates, moves around the vehicle ahead, then goes back into the right lane again. A simple maneuver?

Not necessarily! Passing another vehicle on a two-lane highway is a potentially dangerous move, since the passing vehicle occupies the same lane as oncoming traffic for several seconds. A miscalculation, an error in judgment, or a brief surrender to frustration or anger can suddenly put the passing driver face to face with the worst of all traffic accidents — the head-on collision.

So here are some tips for passing:

- Drive ahead. Look down the road, to the sides, and to crossroads for situations that might affect your passing patterns. If you have any doubt whatsoever about making a successful pass, wait for a better time.

- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings, and lines. If you can see a sign up ahead that might indicate a turn or an intersection, delay your pass. A broken center line usually indicates it is all right to pass, providing the road ahead is clear. Never cross a solid line on your side of the lane or a double solid line, even if the road seems empty of approaching traffic.
- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass while you are awaiting an opportunity. For one thing, following too closely reduces your area of vision, especially if you are following a larger vehicle. Also, you will not have adequate space if the vehicle ahead suddenly slows or stops. Keep back a reasonable distance.

- When it looks like a chance to pass is coming up, start to accelerate but stay in the right lane and do not get too close. Time your move so you will be increasing speed as the time comes to move into the other lane. If the way is clear to pass, you will have a running start that more than makes up for the distance you would lose by dropping back. And if something happens to cause you to cancel your pass, you need only slow down and drop back again and wait for another opportunity.
- If other vehicles are lined up to pass a slow vehicle, wait your turn. But take care that someone is not trying to pass you as you pull out to pass the slow vehicle. Remember to glance over your shoulder and check the blind spot.
- Check your vehicle's mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and start your left lane change signal before moving out of the right lane to pass. When you are far enough ahead of the passed vehicle to see its front in your vehicle's inside mirror, activate the right lane change signal and move back into the right lane. Remember that, if your vehicle's passenger side outside mirror is convex, the vehicle you just passed may seem to be farther away from you than it really is.
- Try not to pass more than one vehicle at a time on two-lane roads. Reconsider before passing the next vehicle.
- Do not overtake a slowly moving vehicle too rapidly. Even though the brake lamps are not flashing, it may be slowing down or starting to turn.
- If you are being passed, make it easy for the following driver to get ahead of you. Perhaps you can ease a little to the right.

## Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

## Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to your vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, your wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

A cornering skid is best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If your vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, your vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, you will want to slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until your vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Any Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) helps avoid only the braking skid.



## Off-Road Driving

If your vehicle has 20-inch tire/wheel assemblies, you should not drive off-road unless you are on a level, solid surface. See *Tires on page 384*.

Many of the same design features that help make your vehicle responsive on paved roads during poor weather conditions — features like the locking rear axle and all-wheel drive — help make it much better suited for off-road use than a conventional passenger car. Its higher ground clearance also helps your vehicle step over some off-road obstacles. But your vehicle does not have features like special underbody shielding and a transfer case low gear range, things that are usually thought necessary for extended or severe off-road service. This guide is for operating your vehicle off paved roads.

Also, see *Braking on page 256*.

Off-road driving can be great fun. But it does have some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself.

“Off-roading” means you have left the great North American road system behind. Traffic lanes are not marked. Curves are not banked. There are no road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill or downhill. In short, you have gone right back to nature.

Off-road driving involves some new skills. And that is why it is very important that you read this guide. You will find many driving tips and suggestions. These will help make your off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

## Before You Go Off-Roading

There are some things to do before you go out. For example, be sure to have all necessary maintenance and service work done. Check to make sure all underbody shields, if the vehicle has them, are properly attached. Is there enough fuel? Is the spare tire fully inflated? Are the fluid levels up where they should be? What are the local laws that apply to off-roading where you will be driving? If you do not know, you should check with law enforcement people in the area. Will you be on someone’s private land? If so, be sure to get the necessary permission.

## Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

### CAUTION:

- **Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Keep cargo below the top of the seatbacks.**
- **Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.**
- **Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.**

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the load floor and forward of the rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is secured properly, so driving on the off-road terrain does not toss things around.

You will find other important information in this manual. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296* and *Tires on page 384*.

## Environmental Concerns

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. We recognize these concerns and urge every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment:

- Always use established trails, roads, and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving; obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage the environment — shrubs, flowers, trees, grasses — or disturb wildlife. This includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees, or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground.
- Always carry a litter bag — make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires where permitted, camp stoves, and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

## Traveling to Remote Areas

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. You are much less likely to get bad surprises. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Try to learn of any blocked or closed roads.

It is also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle. If something happens to one of them, the other can help quickly.

Does your vehicle have a winch? If so, be sure to read the winch instructions. In a remote area, a winch can be handy if you get stuck. But you will want to know how to use it properly.

## Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving

It is a good idea to practice in an area that is safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-road driving does require some new and different driving skills. Here is what we mean.

Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes, for example, need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. With your arms, hands, feet, and body, you will need to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

Controlling your vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control your vehicle is to control your speed. Here are some things to keep in mind. At higher speeds:

- You approach things faster and you have less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- You have less time to react.
- You have more vehicle bounce when you drive over obstacles.
- You will need more distance for braking, especially since you are on an unpaved surface.

### CAUTION:

**When you are driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you are driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.**

## Scanning the Terrain

Off-road driving can take you over many different kinds of terrain. You need to be familiar with the terrain and its many different features. Here are some things to consider.

**Surface Conditions:** Off-roading can take you over hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow, or ice. Each of these surfaces affects the steering, acceleration, and braking of your vehicle in different ways. Depending upon the kind of surface you are on, you may experience slipping, sliding, wheel spinning, delayed acceleration, poor traction, and longer braking distances.

**Surface Obstacles:** Unseen or hidden obstacles can be hazardous. A rock, log, hole, rut, or bump can startle you if you are not prepared for them. Often these obstacles are hidden by grass, bushes, snow, or even the rise and fall of the terrain itself. Here are some things to consider:

- Is the path ahead clear?
- Will the surface texture change abruptly up ahead?
- Does the travel take you uphill or downhill? There is more discussion of these subjects later.
- Will you have to stop suddenly or change direction quickly?

When you drive over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs, or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands if you are not prepared.

When you drive over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, the wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you cannot control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it is especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns, or sudden braking.

In a way, off-road driving requires a different kind of alertness from driving on paved roads and highways. There are no road signs, posted speed limits, or signal lights. You have to use your own good judgment about what is safe and what is not.

Drinking and driving can be very dangerous on any road. And this is certainly true for off-road driving. At the very time you need special alertness and driving skills, your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious — or even fatal — accident if you drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. See *Drunken Driving on page 253*.

## Driving on Off-Road Hills

Off-road driving often takes you up, down, or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and an understanding of what your vehicle can and cannot do. There are some hills that simply cannot be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

### CAUTION:

**Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you cannot control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, do not drive the hill.**

## Approaching a Hill

When you approach a hill, you need to decide if it is one of those hills that is just too steep to climb, descend, or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only

a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top. On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you may not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass, or shrubs.

Here are some things to consider as you approach a hill.

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you will not have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path, such as boulders, trees, logs, or ruts?
- What is beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you do not know. It is the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs, and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

## Driving Uphill

Once you decide you can safely drive up the hill, you need to take some special steps.

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain your speed. Do not use more power than you need, because you do not want the wheels to start spinning or sliding.
- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.

### CAUTION:

**Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.**

- Ease up on your speed as you approach the top of the hill.
- Attach a flag to the vehicle to make you more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.
- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you are there.
- Use the headlamps even during the day. They make you more visible to oncoming traffic.

### CAUTION:

**Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.**

**Q: What should I do if my vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, and I cannot make it up the hill?**

**A:** If this happens, there are some things you should do and there are some things you must not do. First, here is what you *should* do:

- Push the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keep it from rolling backwards. Also, apply the parking brake.
- If the engine is still running, shift the transmission to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill as straight as possible in REVERSE (R).
- As you are backing down the hill, put your left hand on the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position. This way, you will be able to tell if the wheels are straight and maneuver as you back down. It is best that you back down the hill with the wheels straight rather than in the left or right direction. Turning the wheel too far to the left or right will increase the possibility of a rollover.

Here are some things you *must not* do if you stall, or are about to stall, when going up a hill.

- Never attempt to prevent a stall by shifting into NEUTRAL (N) to rev-up the engine and regain forward momentum. This will not work. Your vehicle will roll backwards very quickly and you could go out of control.  
Instead, apply the regular brake to stop the vehicle. Then apply the parking brake. Shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back straight down.
- Never attempt to turn around if you are about to stall when going up a hill. If the hill is steep enough to stall your vehicle, it is steep enough to cause you to roll over if you turn around. If you cannot make it up the hill, you must back straight down the hill.



**Q: Suppose, after stalling, I try to back down the hill and decide I just cannot do it. What should I do?**

**A:** Set the parking brake, put the transmission in PARK (P) and turn off the engine. Leave the vehicle and go get some help. Exit on the uphill side and stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill.

## Driving Downhill

When off-roading takes you downhill, you will want to consider a number of things:

- How steep is the downhill? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What is the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?
- What is at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, then try to keep your vehicle headed straight down, and use a low gear. This way, engine drag can help the brakes and they will not have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping your vehicle under control at all times.

### **CAUTION:**

**Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.**

**Q: Are there some things I should not do when driving down a hill?**

**A:** Yes! These are important because if you ignore them you could lose control and have a serious accident.

- When driving downhill, avoid turns that take you across the incline of the hill. A hill that is not too steep to drive down may be too steep to drive across. You could roll over if you do not drive straight down.
- Never go downhill with the transmission in NEUTRAL (N). This is called “free-wheeling.” The brakes will have to do all the work and could overheat and fade.

**Q: Am I likely to stall when going downhill?**

**A:** It is much more likely to happen going uphill. But if it happens going downhill, here is what to do.

1. Stop your vehicle by applying the regular brakes. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to PARK (P) and, while still braking, restart the engine.

3. Shift back to a low gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down.
4. If the engine will not start, get out and get help.

## **Driving Across an Incline**

Sooner or later, an off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. If this happens, you have to decide whether to try to drive across the incline. Here are some things to consider:

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down may be too steep to drive across. When you go straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base — the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels — reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end. But when you drive across an incline, the much more narrow track width — the distance between the left and right wheels — may not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Also, driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels. This could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.

- Surface conditions can be a problem when you drive across a hill. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause the tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it — a rock, a rut, etc. — and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, your vehicle can tilt even more.

For reasons like these, you need to decide carefully whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline does not mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

 **CAUTION:**

**Driving across an incline that is too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, do not drive across it. Find another route instead.**

**Q: What if I am driving across an incline that is not too steep, but I hit some loose gravel and start to slide downhill. What should I do?**

**A:** If you feel your vehicle starting to slide sideways, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping. However, a much better way to prevent this is to get out and “walk the course” so you know what the surface is like before you drive it.

## Stalling on an Incline

If your vehicle stalls when you are crossing an incline, be sure you, and any passengers, get out on the uphill side, even if the door there is harder to open. If you get out on the downhill side and the vehicle starts to roll over, you will be right in its path.

If you have to walk down the slope, stay out of the path the vehicle will take if it does roll over.



### CAUTION:

**Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.**

## Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow, or Ice

When you drive in mud, snow, or sand, the wheels will not get good traction. You cannot accelerate as quickly, turning is more difficult, and you will need longer braking distances.

It is best to use a low gear when you are in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, the idea is to keep your vehicle moving so you do not get stuck.

When you drive on sand, you will sense a change in wheel traction. But it will depend upon how loosely packed the sand is. On loosely packed sand, such as on beaches or sand dunes, the tires will tend to sink into the sand. This has an effect on steering, accelerating, and braking. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it is very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And if you do get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause you to slide out of control.

### CAUTION:

**Driving on frozen lakes, ponds, or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.**

## Driving in Water

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before you drive through it. If it is deep enough to cover the wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe, do not try it — you probably will not get through. Also, water that deep can damage the axle and other vehicle parts.

If the water is not too deep, drive slowly through it. At faster speeds, water splashes on the ignition system and your vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get the tailpipe under water. And, as long as the tailpipe is under water, you will never be able to start the engine. When you go through water, remember that when the brakes get wet, it may take you longer to stop.

### CAUTION:

**Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it is only shallow water, it can still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Do not drive through rushing water.**

See *Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads* on page 280 for more information on driving through water.

## After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody, chassis, or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires, and exhaust system for damage. Also, check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

Your vehicle will require more frequent service due to off-road use. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule for additional information.

## Driving at Night

Night driving is more dangerous than day driving. One reason is that some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Here are some tips on night driving.

- Drive defensively.
- Do not drink and drive.

- Adjust the inside rearview mirror to reduce the glare from headlamps behind you.
- Since you cannot see as well, you may need to slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles.
- Slow down, especially on higher speed roads. Your vehicle's headlamps can light up only so much road ahead.
- In remote areas, watch for animals.
- If you are tired, pull off the road in a safe place and rest.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But as we get older these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver may require at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

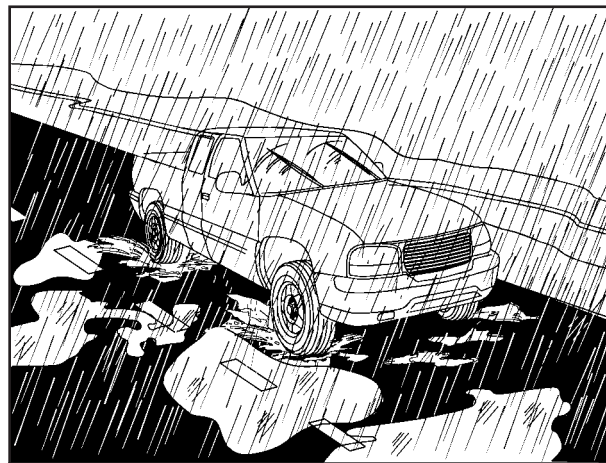
What you do in the daytime can also affect your night vision. For example, if you spend the day in bright sunshine you are wise to wear sunglasses. Your eyes will have less trouble adjusting to night. But if you are driving, do not wear sunglasses at night. They may cut down on glare from headlamps, but they also make a lot of things invisible.

You can be temporarily blinded by approaching headlamps. It can take a second or two, or even several seconds, for your eyes to re-adjust to the dark. When you are faced with severe glare, as from a driver who does not lower the high beams, or a vehicle with misaimed headlamps, slow down a little. Avoid staring directly into the approaching headlamps.

Keep the windshield and all the glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out. Glare at night is made much worse by dirt on the glass. Even the inside of the glass can build up a film caused by dust. Dirty glass makes lights dazzle and flash more than clean glass would, making the pupils of your eyes contract repeatedly.

Remember that the headlamps light up far less of a roadway when you are in a turn or curve. Keep your eyes moving; that way, it is easier to pick out dimly lighted objects. Just as the headlamps should be checked regularly for proper aim, so should your eyes be examined regularly. Some drivers suffer from night blindness — the inability to see in dim light — and are not even aware of it.

## Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads



Rain and wet roads can mean driving trouble. On a wet road, you cannot stop, accelerate, or turn as well because your tire-to-road traction is not as good as on dry roads.



And, if your tires do not have much tread left, you will get even less traction. It is always wise to go slower and be cautious if rain starts to fall while you are driving. The surface may get wet suddenly when your reflexes are tuned for driving on dry pavement.

The heavier the rain, the harder it is to see. Even if your windshield wiper blades are in good shape, a heavy rain can make it harder to see road signs and traffic signals, pavement markings, the edge of the road, and even people walking.

It is wise to keep your wiping equipment in good shape and keep your windshield washer fluid reservoir filled with washer fluid. Replace your windshield wiper inserts when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield, or when strips of rubber start to separate from the inserts.

 **CAUTION:**

**Wet brakes can cause accidents. They may not work as well in a quick stop and may cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.**

**After driving through a large puddle of water or a car wash, apply your brake pedal lightly until your brakes work normally.**

Driving too fast through large water puddles or even going through some car washes can cause problems, too. The water may affect your brakes. Try to avoid puddles. But if you cannot, try to slow down before you hit them.

## Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. So much water can build up under your tires that they can actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

Hydroplaning does not happen often. But it can if your tires do not have much tread or if the pressure in one or more is low. It can happen if a lot of water is standing on the road. If you can see reflections from trees, telephone poles, or other vehicles, and raindrops dimple the water's surface, there could be hydroplaning.

Hydroplaning usually happens at higher speeds. There just is not a hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when it is raining.

## Driving Through Deep Standing Water

***Notice:*** If you drive too quickly through deep puddles or standing water, water can come in through your engine's air intake and badly damage your engine. Never drive through water that is slightly lower than the underbody of your vehicle. If you cannot avoid deep puddles or standing water, drive through them very slowly.

## Driving Through Flowing Water

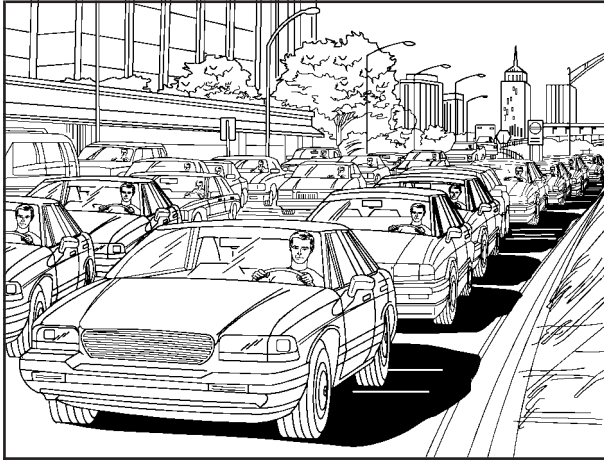
### CAUTION:

**Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. If you try to drive through flowing water, as you might at a low water crossing, your vehicle can be carried away. As little as six inches of flowing water can carry away a smaller vehicle. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warning signs, and otherwise be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.**

## Some Other Rainy Weather Tips

- Turn on your low-beam headlamps — not just your parking lamps — to help make you more visible to others.
- Besides slowing down, allow some extra following distance. And be especially careful when you pass another vehicle. Allow yourself more clear room ahead, and be prepared to have your view restricted by road spray.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 384*.

## City Driving



One of the biggest problems with city streets is the amount of traffic on them. You will want to watch out for what the other drivers are doing and pay attention to traffic signals.

Here are ways to increase your safety in city driving:

- Know the best way to get to where you are going. Get a city map and plan your trip into an unknown part of the city just as you would for a cross-country trip.
- Try to use the freeways that rim and crisscross most large cities. You will save time and energy. See *Freeway Driving* on page 285.
- Treat a green light as a warning signal. A traffic light is there because the corner is busy enough to need it. When a light turns green, and just before you start to move, check both ways for vehicles that have not cleared the intersection or may be running the red light.

## Freeway Driving



Mile for mile, freeways — also called thruways, parkways, expressways, turnpikes, or superhighways — are the safest of all roads. But they have their own special rules.

The most important advice on freeway driving is: Keep up with traffic and keep to the right. Drive at the same speed most of the other drivers are driving. Too-fast or too-slow driving breaks a smooth traffic flow. Treat the left lane on a freeway as a passing lane.

At the entrance, there is usually a ramp that leads to the freeway. If you have a clear view of the freeway as you drive along the entrance ramp, you should begin to check traffic. Try to determine where you expect to blend with the flow. Try to merge into the gap at close to the prevailing speed. Switch on your turn signal, check your mirrors, and glance over your shoulder as often as necessary. Try to blend smoothly with the traffic flow.

Once you are on the freeway, adjust your speed to the posted limit or to the prevailing rate if it is slower. Stay in the right lane unless you want to pass.

Before changing lanes, check your mirrors. Then use your turn signal.

Just before you leave the lane, glance quickly over your shoulder to make sure there is not another vehicle in your blind spot.

Once you are moving on the freeway, make certain you allow a reasonable following distance. Expect to move slightly slower at night.

When you want to leave the freeway, move to the proper lane well in advance. If you miss your exit, do not, under any circumstances, stop and back up. Drive on to the next exit.

The exit ramp can be curved, sometimes quite sharply. The exit speed is usually posted.

Reduce your speed according to your speedometer, not to your sense of motion. After driving for any distance at higher speeds, you may tend to think you are going slower than you actually are.

## **Before Leaving on a Long Trip**

Make sure you are ready. Try to be well rested. If you must start when you are not fresh — such as after a day's work — do not plan to make too many miles that first part of the journey. Wear comfortable clothing and shoes you can easily drive in.

Is your vehicle ready for a long trip? If you keep it serviced and maintained, it is ready to go. If it needs service, have it done before starting out. Of course, you will find experienced and able service experts in GM dealerships all across North America. They will be ready and willing to help if you need it.

Here are some things you can check before a trip:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Is the reservoir full? Are all windows clean inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* Are they in good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* Have you checked all levels?
- *Lamps:* Are they all working? Are the lenses clean?
- *Tires:* They are vitally important to a safe, trouble-free trip. Is the tread good enough for long-distance driving? Are the tires all inflated to the recommended pressure?
- *Weather Forecasts:* What is the weather outlook along your route? Should you delay your trip a short time to avoid a major storm system?
- *Maps:* Do you have up-to-date maps?

## Highway Hypnosis

Is there actually such a condition as highway hypnosis? Or is it just plain falling asleep at the wheel? Call it highway hypnosis, lack of awareness, or whatever.

There is something about an easy stretch of road with the same scenery, along with the hum of the tires on the road, the drone of the engine, and the rush of the wind against the vehicle that can make you sleepy. Do not let it happen to you! If it does, your vehicle can leave the road in less than a second, and you could crash and be injured.

What can you do about highway hypnosis? First, be aware that it can happen.

Then here are some tips:

- Make sure your vehicle is well ventilated, with a comfortably cool interior.
- Keep your eyes moving. Scan the road ahead and to the sides. Check your mirrors and your instruments frequently.
- If you get sleepy, pull off the road into a rest, service, or parking area and take a nap, get some exercise, or both. For safety, treat drowsiness on the highway as an emergency.

## Hill and Mountain Roads



Driving on steep hills or mountains is different from driving in flat or rolling terrain.

If you drive regularly in steep country, or if you are planning to visit there, here are some tips that can make your trips safer and more enjoyable. See *Off-Road Driving* on page 265 for information about driving off-road.

- Keep your vehicle in good shape. Check all fluid levels and also the brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission. These parts can work hard on mountain roads.

### **CAUTION:**

**If you do not shift down, your brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let your engine assist your brakes on a steep downhill slope.**



 **CAUTION:**

**Coasting downhill in NEUTRAL (N) or with the ignition off is dangerous. Your brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down. They could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have your engine running and your vehicle in gear when you go downhill.**

- Know how to go down hills. The most important thing to know is this: let your engine do some of the slowing down. Shift to a lower gear when you go down a steep or long hill.
- Know how to go uphill. You may want to shift down to a lower gear. The lower gears help cool your engine and transmission, and you can climb the hill better.

- Stay in your own lane when driving on two-lane roads in hills or mountains. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- As you go over the top of a hill, be alert. There could be something in your lane, like a stalled car or an accident.
- You may see highway signs on mountains that warn of special problems. Examples are long grades, passing or no-passing zones, a falling rocks area, or winding roads. Be alert to these and take appropriate action.

## Winter Driving



Here are some tips for winter driving:

- Have your vehicle in good shape for winter.
- You may want to put winter emergency supplies in your vehicle.

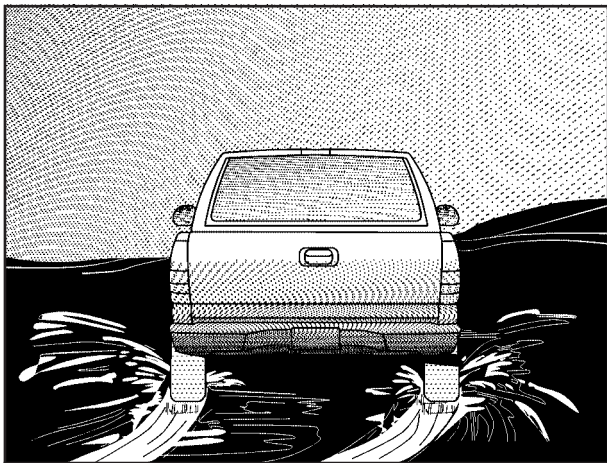
Also see *Tires* on page 384.

Include an ice scraper, a small brush or broom, a supply of windshield washer fluid, a rag, some winter outer clothing, a small shovel, a flashlight, a red cloth, and reflective warning triangles. And, if you will be driving under severe conditions, include a small bag of sand, a piece of old carpet, or a couple of burlap bags to help provide traction. Be sure you properly secure these items in your vehicle.

### Driving on Snow or Ice

Most of the time, those places where the tires meet the road probably have good traction.

However, if there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, you can have a very slippery situation. You will have a lot less traction, or grip, and will need to be very careful.



What is the worst time for this? Wet ice. Very cold snow or ice can be slick and hard to drive on. But wet ice can be even more trouble because it may offer the least traction of all. You can get wet ice when it is about freezing, 32°F (0°C), and freezing rain begins to fall. Try to avoid driving on wet ice until salt and sand crews can get there.

Whatever the condition — smooth ice, packed, blowing, or loose snow — drive with caution.

Accelerate gently. Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

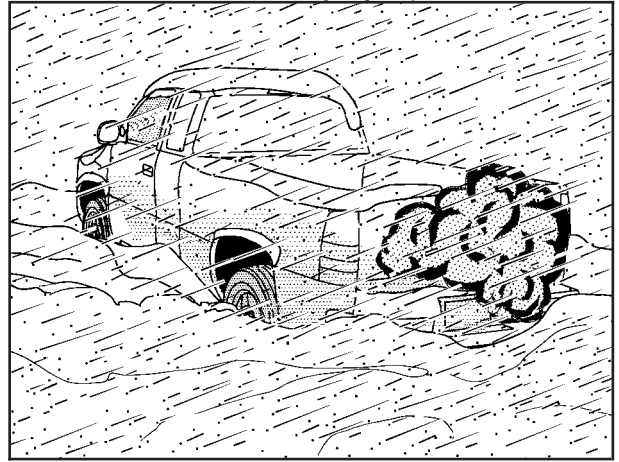
The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) improves your vehicle's stability when you make a hard stop on a slippery road. Even though you have ABS, you will want to begin stopping sooner than you would on dry pavement. See *Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)* on page 257.

- Allow greater following distance on any slippery road.
- Watch for slippery spots. The road might be fine until you hit a spot that is covered with ice. On an otherwise clear road, ice patches may appear in shaded areas where the sun cannot reach, such as around clumps of trees, behind buildings, or under bridges. Sometimes the surface of a curve or an overpass may remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. If you see a patch of ice ahead of you, brake before you are on it. Try not to brake while you are actually on the ice, and avoid sudden steering maneuvers.

## If You Are Caught in a Blizzard

If you are stopped by heavy snow, you could be in a serious situation. You should probably stay with your vehicle unless you know for sure that you are near help and you can hike through the snow. Here are some things to do to summon help and keep yourself and your passengers safe:

- Turn on your hazard flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to your vehicle to alert police that you have been stopped by the snow.
- Put on extra clothing or wrap a blanket around you. If you do not have blankets or extra clothing, make body insulators from newspapers, burlap bags, rags, floor mats — anything you can wrap around yourself or tuck under your clothing to keep warm.



You can run the engine to keep warm, but be careful.

 **CAUTION:**

**Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking your exhaust pipe. And check around again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.**

**Open a window just a little on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind. This will help keep CO out.**

Run your engine only as long as you must. This saves fuel. When you run the engine, make it go a little faster than just idle. That is, push the accelerator slightly. This uses less fuel for the heat that you get and it keeps the battery charged. You will need a well-charged battery to restart the vehicle, and possibly for signaling later on with your headlamps. Let the heater run for a while.

Then, shut the engine off and close the window almost all the way to preserve the heat. Start the engine again and repeat this only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. But do it as little as possible. Preserve the fuel as long as you can. To help keep warm, you can get out of the vehicle and do some fairly vigorous exercises every half hour or so until help comes.

## If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow

In order to free your vehicle when it is stuck, you will need to spin the wheels, but you do not want to spin your wheels too fast. The method known as rocking can help you get out when you are stuck, but you must use caution.

### CAUTION:

**If you let your vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. And, the transmission or other parts of the vehicle can overheat. That could cause an engine compartment fire or other damage. When you are stuck, spin the wheels as little as possible. Do not spin the wheels above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.**

**Notice:** Spinning the wheels can destroy parts of your vehicle as well as the tires. If you spin the wheels too fast while shifting the transmission back and forth, you can destroy the transmission.

For information about using tire chains on your vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 402*.

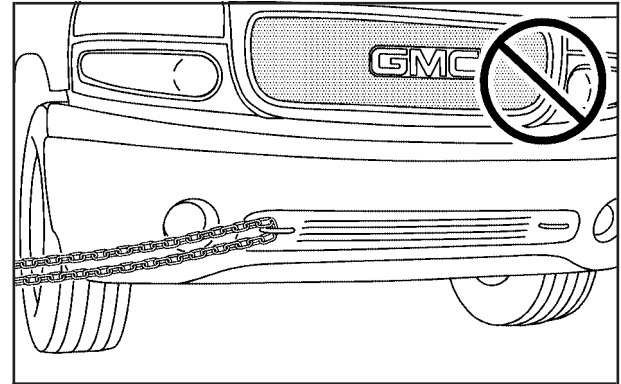
## Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out

First, turn the steering wheel left and right. That will clear the area around the front wheels. Then shift back and forth between REVERSE (R) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. Release the accelerator pedal while you shift, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. By slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions, you will cause a rocking motion that may free your vehicle. If that does not get your vehicle out after a few tries, it may need to be towed out. Or, you can use the recovery hooks. If your vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 303*.

## Recovery Hooks

### CAUTION:

These hooks, when used, are under a lot of force. Always pull the vehicle straight out. Never pull on the hooks at a sideways angle. The hooks could break off and you or others could be injured from the chain or cable snapping back.



**Notice:** Never use recovery hooks to tow the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged and it would not be covered by warranty.

Your vehicle has recovery hooks at the front of the vehicle. You may need to use them if you are stuck off-road and need to be pulled to some place where you can continue driving.

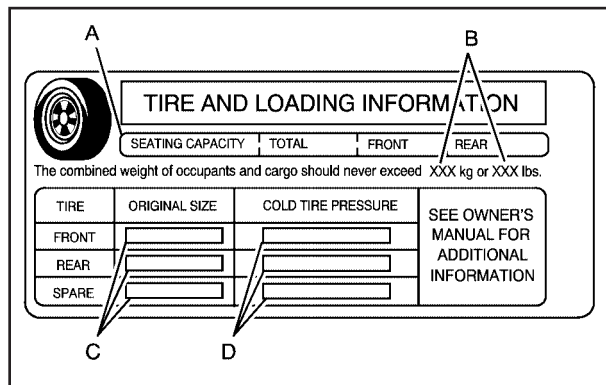
## Loading Your Vehicle

It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it was designed to carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification/Tire label.

### CAUTION:

**Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.**

## Tire and Loading Information Label



### Label Example

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver's door open, you will find the label attached below the door lock post (striker). The tire and loading information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.



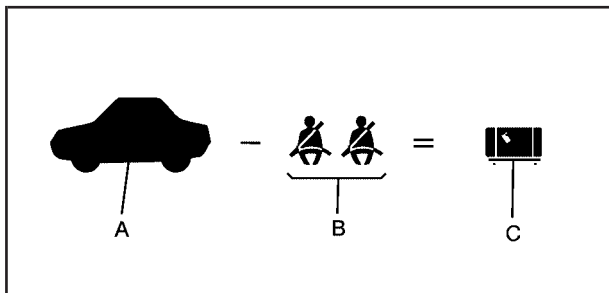
The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires on page 384* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393*.

There is also important loading information on the vehicle Certification/Tire label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axles. See “Certification/Tire Label” later in this section.

### **Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit**

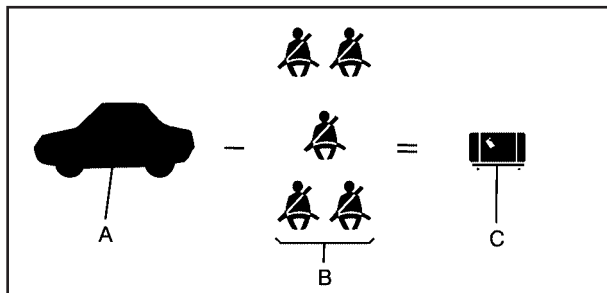
1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. See *Towing a Trailer on page 304* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules and trailering tips.



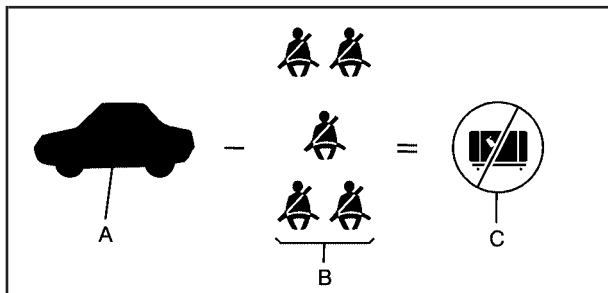
**Example 1**

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 2 =	300 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Occupant and Cargo Weight =	700 lbs (317 kg)



**Example 2**

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 5 =	750 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	250 lbs (113 kg)

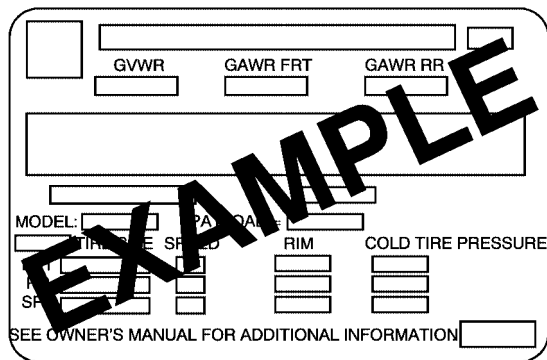


**Example 3**

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 200 lbs (91 kg) × 5 =	1000 lbs (453 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	0 lbs (0 kg)

Refer to your vehicle's tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

## Certification/Tire Label



A vehicle specific Certification/Tire label is found on the rear edge of the driver's door. The label shows the size of your vehicle's original tires and the inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of your vehicle. This is called Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo.

The Certification/Tire label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

The Certification/Tire label also contains important information about your Front Axle Reserve Capacity.

 **CAUTION:**

**In the case of a sudden stop or collision, things carried in the bed of your truck could shift forward and come into the passenger area, injuring you and others. If you put things in the bed of your truck, you should make sure they are properly secured.**

 **CAUTION:**

**Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.**

***Notice:*** Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

If you put things inside your vehicle — like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else — they go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

 **CAUTION:**

**Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.**

- **Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.**
- **Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.**
- **Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.**

There is also important loading information for off-road driving in this manual. See “Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving” under *Off-Road Driving* on page 265.

## **Two-Tiered Loading**

By positioning four 2” x 6” wooden planks across the width of the pickup box, you can create an upper load platform. The planks must be inserted in the pickup box depressions. The length of the planks must allow for at least a 3/4 inch (2 cm) bearing surface on each end of the plank.

When using this upper load platform, be sure the load is securely tied down to prevent it from shifting. The load’s center of gravity should be positioned in a zone over the rear axle. The zone is located in the area between the front of each wheel well and the rear of each wheel well. The center of gravity height must not extend above the top of the pickup box flareboard.

Any load that extends beyond the vehicle’s taillamp area must be properly marked according to local laws and regulations.

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the front or rear axle.

## Add-On Equipment

When you carry removable items, you may need to put a limit on how many people you carry inside your vehicle. Be sure to weigh your vehicle before you buy and install the new equipment.

**Notice:** Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the front or rear axle.

*Equipment	Maximum Weight
Ladder Rack and Cargo	750 lbs (340 kg)
Cross Toolbox and Cargo	400 lbs (181 kg)
Side Boxes and Cargo	250 lbs per side (113 kg per side)
*The combined weight for all rail-mounted equipment should not exceed 1,000 lbs (454 kg). A reinforcement kit for rail-mounted add-on equipment is recommended. See your GM dealer.	

## Truck-Camper Loading Information

Your vehicle was neither designed nor intended to carry a slide-in type camper.

**Notice:** Adding a slide-in camper or similar equipment to your vehicle can damage it, and the repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not install a slide-in camper or similar equipment on your vehicle.

## Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab

General Motors is aware that some vehicle owners may consider having the pickup box removed and a commercial or recreational body installed. Owners should be aware that, as manufactured, there are differences between a chassis cab and a pickup with the box removed which may affect vehicle safety. The components necessary to adapt a pickup to permit its safe use with a specialized body should be installed by the body builder.

# Towing

## Towing Your Vehicle

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if you need to have your disabled vehicle towed. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 474*.

If you want to tow your vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes (such as behind a motorhome), see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” following.

## Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing your vehicle behind another vehicle — such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as “dinghy towing” (towing your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground) and “dolly towing” (towing your vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a “dolly”).

Your vehicle was not designed to be towed with any of its wheels on the ground. If your vehicle must be towed, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 303*.

**Notice:** Towing an all-wheel-drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, or even with only two of its wheels on the ground, will damage drivetrain components. Do not tow an all-wheel-drive vehicle if any of its wheels will be on the ground.

## Towing a Trailer

Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *New Vehicle Break-In* on page 99 for more information.

### CAUTION:

**If you do not use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.**

**Notice:** Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this part, and see your dealer for important information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.

To identify the trailering capacity of your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section.

Trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in acceleration, braking, handling, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

That’s the reason for this part. In it are many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.



## If You Do Decide To Pull A Trailer

If you do, here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure your rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you'll be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control. See "Hitches" later in this section.
- Don't tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (800 km) your new vehicle is driven. Your engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (800 km) that you tow a trailer, don't drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and don't make starts at full throttle. This helps your engine and other parts of your vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- You can tow in DRIVE (D). You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g., under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions).

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- the weight of the trailer
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the weight on your vehicle's tires

### Tow/Haul Mode

Tow/Haul is a feature that assists when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load. The purpose of the Tow/Haul mode is to:

- Reduce the frequency and improve the predictability of transmission shifts when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.
- Provide the same solid shift feel when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load as when the vehicle is unloaded.
- Improve control of vehicle speed while requiring less throttle pedal activity when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a switch on the shift lever which when pressed enables Tow/Haul. When the switch is pressed, a light on the instrument panel will illuminate to indicate that Tow/Haul has been selected. Tow/Haul may be turned off by pressing the switch again, at which time the indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will turn off. The vehicle will automatically turn off Tow/Haul every time it is started.

Tow/Haul is designed to be most effective when the vehicle and trailer combined weight is at least 75 percent of the vehicle's Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR). See Weight of the Trailer later in this section. Tow/haul is most useful under the following driving conditions:

- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load through rolling terrain.
- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load in stop and go traffic.
- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load in busy parking lots where improved low speed control of the vehicle is desired.

Operating the vehicle in Tow/Haul when lightly loaded or with no trailer at all will not cause damage. However, there is no benefit to the selection of Tow/Haul when the vehicle is unloaded. Such a selection when unloaded may result in unpleasant engine and transmission driving characteristics and reduced fuel economy. Tow/Haul is recommended only when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

## **Weight of the Trailer**

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how you plan to use your rig. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See "Weight of the Trailer Tongue" later in this section for more information.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Use the following chart to determine how much your vehicle can weigh, based upon your vehicle model and options.

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR
<b>K-1500*</b>			
6000 V8	4.10	8,100 lbs (3 674 kg)	14,000 lbs (6 350 kg)
*Fifth-wheel or gooseneck trailering is neither designed nor intended for this vehicle.			

The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any passengers, cargo, equipment and conversions. The GCWR for your vehicle should not be exceeded.

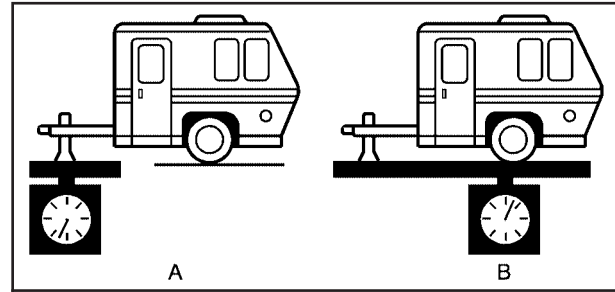
You can ask your dealer for our trailering information or advice, or you can write us at the address listed in your Warranty and Owner Assistance Information Booklet.

In Canada, write to:

General Motors of Canada Limited  
 Customer Communication Centre, 163-005  
 1908 Colonel Sam Drive  
 Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

## Weight of Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total or gross weight of your vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If you have a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in your vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight your vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight your vehicle can tow. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296* for more information about your vehicle's maximum load capacity.



The trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 percent to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B), up to a maximum of 600 lbs (272 kg) with a weight carrying hitch. The trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 percent to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight, up to a maximum of 1,000 lbs (453 kg) with a weight distributing hitch.

Do not exceed the maximum allowable tongue weight for your vehicle. Choose the shortest hitch extension that will position the hitch ball closest to the vehicle. This will help reduce the effect of trailer tongue weight on the rear axle.

After you have loaded the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, you may be able to get them right by moving some items around in the trailer.

Trailer weight may be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight. Tongue weight cannot cause the vehicle to exceed the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) or the RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating). The effect of additional weight may reduce your trailering capacity more than the total of the additional weight.

Consider the following example:

A vehicle model base weight is 5,500 lbs (2 495 kg); 2,800 lbs (1 270 kg) at the front axle and 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg) at the rear axle. It has a GVWR of 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg), a RGAWR of 4,000 lbs (1 814 kg) and a GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating) of 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg). The trailer rating should be:

14,000 lbs (6350 kg)	GCWR
<u>-5,500 lbs (2495 kg)</u>	Vehicle Weight
8,500 lbs (3855 kg)	Trailer Rating

You can expect tongue weight to be at least 10 percent of trailer weight (850 lbs (386 kg)) and because the weight is applied well behind the rear axle, the effect on the rear axle will be greater than just the weight itself, as much as 1.5 times as much. The weight at the rear axle could be 850 lbs (386 kg) X 1.5 = 1,275 lbs (578 kg).

Since the rear axle already weighs 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg), adding 1,275 lbs (578 kg) brings the total to 3,975 lbs (1 803 kg). This is very close to, but within the limit for RGAWR as well. The vehicle is set to trailer up to 8,500 lbs (3 856 kg).

But let's say your specific vehicle is equipped with some of the latest options and you have a front seat passenger and two rear seat passengers with some luggage and gear in the vehicle as well. You may add 300 lbs (136 kg) to the front axle weight and 400 lbs (181 kg) to the rear axle weight. Your vehicle now weighs:

2,800 lbs (1270 kg)	+	300 lbs (136 kg)	Front
<u>2,700 lbs (1225 kg)</u>	+	<u>400 lbs (181 kg)</u>	<u>Rear</u>
6,200 lbs (2812 kg)			Total

Weight is still below 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg) and you may think that you should subtract 700 additional pounds (318 kg) from your trailering capacity to stay within GCWR limits.

Your maximum trailer would only be 7,800 lbs (3 538 kg). You may go further and think you must limit tongue weight to less than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) to avoid exceeding GVWR. But, you must still consider the effect on the rear axle. Because your rear axle now weighs 3,100 lbs (1 406 kg), you can only put 900 lbs (408 kg) on the rear axle without exceeding RGAWR. The effect of tongue weight is about 1.5 times the actual weight. Dividing the 900 lbs (408 kg) by 1.5 leaves you with being able to handle only 600 lbs (272 kg) of tongue weight. Since tongue weight is usually at least 10 percent of total loaded trailer weight, you can expect that the largest trailer your vehicle can properly handle is 6,000 lbs (2 721 kg).

It is important that you make sure your vehicle does not exceed any of its ratings — GCWR, GVWR, RGAWR, Maximum Trailer Rating or Tongue Weight. The only way to be sure you are not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh your vehicle and trailer.

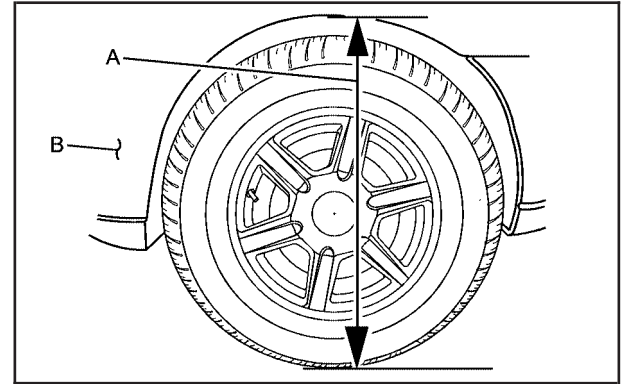
## Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure your vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. You'll find these numbers on the Certification label at the rear edge of the driver's door or see Loading Your Vehicle for more information. Then be sure you don't go over the GVW limit for your vehicle, or the GAWR, including the weight of the trailer tongue. If you use a weight distributing hitch, make sure you don't go over the rear axle limit before you apply the weight distribution spring bars.

## Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons you'll need the right hitch.

## Weight Distributing Hitches and Weight Carrying Hitches



**(A) Body to Ground Distance (B) Front of Vehicle**

When using a weight-distributing hitch, the hitch must be adjusted so the distance (A) remains the same both before and after coupling the trailer to the tow vehicle.

If you use a step-bumper hitch, the bumper could be damaged in sharp turns. Make sure there is ample room when turning to avoid contact between the trailer and the bumper.

If you will be pulling a trailer that, when loaded, will weigh more than 5,000 lbs (2 270 kg) be sure to use a properly mounted weight-distributing hitch and sway control of the proper size. This equipment is very important for proper vehicle loading and good handling when driving. Always use a sway control if the trailer will weigh more than these limits. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway controls.

## Safety Chains

You should always attach safety chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

You may attach the safety chains to the attaching point on the hitch platform. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your rig. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

## Trailer Brakes

If your trailer weighs more than 2,000 lbs (900 kg) loaded, then it needs its own brakes – and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

Your trailer brake system can tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system only if:

- The trailer parts can withstand 3,000 psi (20 650 kPa) of pressure.
- The trailer's brake system will use less than 0.02 cubic inch (0.3 cc) of fluid from your vehicle's master cylinder. Otherwise, both braking systems won't work well. You could even lose your brakes.

If everything checks out this far, make the brake tap at the port on the master cylinder that sends the fluid to the rear brakes. But don't use copper tubing for this. If you do, it will bend and finally break off. Use steel brake tubing.



## Driving with a Trailer

### CAUTION:

If you have a rear-most window open and you pull a trailer with your vehicle, carbon monoxide (CO) could come into your vehicle. You cannot see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness or death. See *Engine Exhaust on page 113*. To maximize your safety when towing a trailer:

- **Have your exhaust system inspected for leaks, and make necessary repairs before starting on your trip.**
- **Keep the rear-most windows closed.**
- **If exhaust does come into your vehicle through a window in the rear or another opening, drive with your front, main heating or cooling system on and with the fan on any speed. This will bring fresh, outside air into your vehicle.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

### **CAUTION: (Continued)**

**Do not use the climate control setting for maximum air because it only recirculates the air inside your vehicle. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 160*.**

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you'll want to get to know your rig. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connector, lamps, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

While towing a trailer or when exposed to long periods of sunshine, the floor of the truck bed may become very warm. Avoid putting items in the truck bed that might be affected by high ambient temperatures.

## Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

## Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because you're a good deal longer, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

## Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

## Making Turns

***Notice:* Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

## Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

The arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps will also flash, telling other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes or stop.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signal when they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

## Driving On Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

You can tow in DRIVE (D). You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g., under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions).

You may also want to activate the tow/haul mode if the transmission shifts too often. See "Tow/Haul Mode" earlier in this section.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If you turn your engine off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, your vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked (preferably on level ground) with the automatic transmission in PARK (P) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If you do get the overheat warning, see *Engine Overheating on page 350*.

## Parking on Hills

### CAUTION:

**You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.**

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but don't shift into PARK (P) yet.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake and shift into PARK (P).
5. Release the regular brakes.

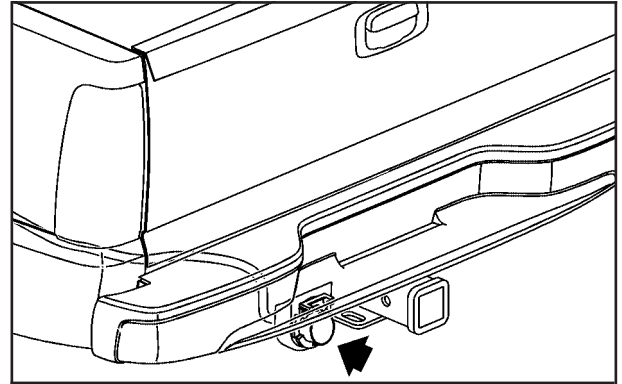
## When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
  - start your engine,
  - shift into a gear, and
  - release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

## Maintenance When Trailer Towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're pulling a trailer. See the Maintenance Schedule for more on this. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid (don't overfill), engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system and brake system. Each of these is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip. Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

## Trailer Wiring Harness



Your pickup is equipped with the eight-wire trailer towing harness. This harness with a seven-pin universal heavy-duty trailer connector is attached to a bracket on the hitch platform.

The Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) wire is tied next to the trailer wiring harness for use with a trailer, slide-in camper or cap.

The eight-wire harness contains the following trailer circuits:

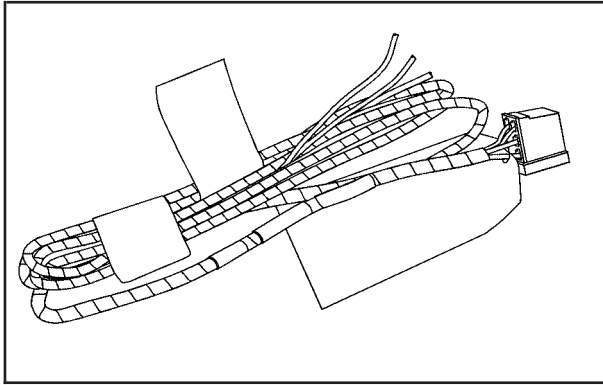
- Yellow: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- Dark Green: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Brown: Taillamps
- White: Ground
- Light Green: Back-up Lamps
- Light Blue: Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)
- Red: Battery Feed\*\*
- Dark Blue: Trailer Brake

\*\*If you are charging a remote (non-vehicle) battery, press the tow/haul mode button located at the end of the shift lever. This will boost the vehicle system voltage and properly charge the battery. If the trailer is too light for tow/haul mode, you can turn on the headlamps as a second way to boost the vehicle system voltage and charge the battery.

## Electric Brake Control Jumper

### CAUTION:

**Be sure to use only the correct trailer brake harness, the one intended for use on your vehicle. If you use some other trailer brake harness, even if it seems to fit, your trailer brakes may not work at all. You could have a crash in which you or others could be injured. Use only the trailer brake harness intended for your vehicle. If it is no longer available to you, be sure to get a proper replacement from your dealer.**



This harness is included with your vehicle as part of the heavy-duty trailer wiring package.

This harness is for an electric brake controller and includes a trailer battery feed fuse. It should be installed by your dealer or a qualified service center.

## Trailer Recommendations

You must subtract your hitch loads from the CWR for your vehicle. Weigh your vehicle with the trailer attached, so that you won't go over the GVWR or GAWR. If you are using a weight-distributing hitch, weigh the vehicle without the spring bars in place.

You'll get the best performance if you spread out the weight of your load the right way, and if you choose the correct hitch and trailer brakes.

For more information, see *Towing a Trailer* on page 304.





## Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

---

<b>Service</b> .....	324	Overheated Engine Protection	
Accessories and Modifications .....	324	Operating Mode .....	353
California Proposition 65 Warning .....	325	Cooling System .....	354
Doing Your Own Service Work .....	325	Engine Fan Noise .....	359
Adding Equipment to the Outside of		Power Steering Fluid .....	360
Your Vehicle .....	326	Windshield Washer Fluid .....	361
<b>Fuel</b> .....	326	Brakes .....	362
Gasoline Octane .....	326	Battery .....	365
Gasoline Specifications .....	326	Jump Starting .....	366
California Fuel .....	327	<b>All-Wheel Drive</b> .....	372
Additives .....	327	<b>Rear Axle</b> .....	373
Fuels in Foreign Countries .....	328	<b>Front Axle</b> .....	374
Filling the Tank .....	329	<b>Bulb Replacement</b> .....	376
Filling a Portable Fuel Container .....	331	Halogen Bulbs .....	376
<b>Checking Things Under the Hood</b> .....	332	Headlamps .....	376
Hood Release .....	333	Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and	
Engine Compartment Overview .....	334	Daytime Running Lamps .....	377
Engine Oil .....	336	Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)	
Engine Oil Life System .....	339	and Cargo Lamp .....	379
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter .....	341	Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and	
Automatic Transmission Fluid .....	343	Back-up Lamps .....	380
Engine Coolant .....	347	License Plate Lamp .....	382
Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap .....	350	Replacement Bulbs .....	382
Engine Overheating .....	350		

## Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

---

<b>Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement</b> .....	383	<b>Appearance Care</b> .....	423
<b>Tires</b> .....	384	Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle .....	423
Tire Sidewall Labeling .....	385	Fabric/Carpet .....	424
Tire Terminology and Definitions .....	389	Leather .....	425
Inflation - Tire Pressure .....	393	Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other	
Tire Inspection and Rotation .....	394	Plastic Surfaces .....	426
When It Is Time for New Tires .....	396	Wood Panels .....	426
Buying New Tires .....	396	Care of Safety Belts .....	426
Different Size Tires and Wheels .....	398	Weatherstrips .....	427
Uniform Tire Quality Grading .....	399	Washing Your Vehicle .....	427
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance .....	400	Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses .....	428
Wheel Replacement .....	401	Finish Care .....	428
Tire Chains .....	402	Windshield and Wiper Blades .....	429
If a Tire Goes Flat .....	403	Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels .....	430
Changing a Flat Tire .....	404	Tires .....	431
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools .....	405	Sheet Metal Damage .....	431
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing		Finish Damage .....	431
the Spare Tire .....	408	Underbody Maintenance .....	432
Secondary Latch System .....	415	Chemical Paint Spotting .....	432
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools .....	418	Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials .....	433
Spare Tire .....	422		

## Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

---

<b>Vehicle Identification</b> .....	434	Fuses and Circuit Breakers .....	436
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) .....	434	Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	436
Service Parts Identification Label .....	434	Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	438
<b>Electrical System</b> .....	435	Underhood Fuse Block .....	439
Add-On Electrical Equipment .....	435	<b>Capacities and Specifications</b> .....	444
Windshield Wiper Fuses .....	435		
Power Windows and Other Power			
Options .....	435		

## Service

Your dealer knows your vehicle best and wants you to be happy with it. We hope you will go to your dealer for all your service needs. You will get genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

We hope you will want to keep your GM vehicle all GM. Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

***ACDelco***

---

**GM Parts**

---

**GM  
Goodwrench**

---

**GM Accessories**

## Accessories and Modifications

When you add non-GM accessories to your vehicle they can affect your vehicle's performance and safety, including such things as, airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like anti-lock brakes, traction control and stability control. Some of these accessories may even cause malfunction or damage not covered by warranty.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on your vehicle. Your GM dealer can accessorize your vehicle using genuine GM Accessories. When you go to your GM dealer and ask for GM Accessories, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM Accessories.

## California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems (including some inside the vehicle), many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

## Doing Your Own Service Work

### **CAUTION:**

**You can be injured and your vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.**

- **Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before you attempt any vehicle maintenance task.**
- **Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily confused. If you use the wrong fasteners, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.**

If you want to do some of your own service work, you will want to use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service your vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 487*.

Your vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 78*.

You should keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work you perform. See *Maintenance Record on page 464*.

## **Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle**

Things you might add to the outside of your vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This may cause wind noise and affect windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

## **Fuel**

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of your vehicle. To help keep your engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, GM recommends the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

## **Gasoline Octane**

Use premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 91 or higher. You may also use regular unleaded gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, but your vehicle's acceleration may be slightly reduced, and you may notice a slight audible knocking noise, commonly referred to as spark knock. If the octane is less than 87, you may notice a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you might damage your engine. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, your engine needs service.

## **Gasoline Specifications**

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 in Canada. Some gasolines may contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). General Motors recommends against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Additives on page 327* for additional information.

## California Fuel

If your vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, your vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on and your vehicle may fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 180*. If this occurs, return to your authorized GM dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs may not be covered by your warranty.

## Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that will help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing your emission control system to work properly. In most cases, you should not have to add anything to your fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean, or if your vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Also, your GM dealer has additives that will help correct and prevent most deposit-related problems.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines may be available in your area. General Motors recommends that you use these gasolines if they comply with the specifications described earlier. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

***Notice:* Your vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in your fuel system and also damage the plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under your warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions may contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT.

General Motors recommends against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on. If this occurs, return to your authorized GM dealer for service.

## Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel may be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by your warranty.

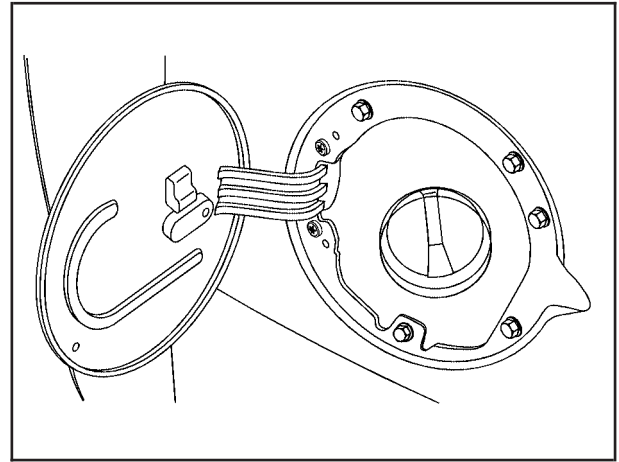
To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.



## Filling the Tank

### CAUTION:

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the pump island. Turn off your engine when you are refueling. Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.



The tethered fuel cap is located behind a hinged fuel door on the driver's side of the vehicle. If the vehicle has E85 fuel capability, a yellow cap with the words "E85 or gasoline" can be seen.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise. It will require more effort to turn the fuel cap on the last turn as you loosen it.

 **CAUTION:**

**If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. This spray can happen if your tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.**

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 427*.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks. It will require more effort to turn the fuel cap on the last turn as you tighten it. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been

left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 180*.

The TIGHTEN FUEL CAP message will be displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC) if the fuel cap is not properly installed. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 190* for more information.

 **CAUTION:**

**If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.**

**Notice:** If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause your malfunction indicator lamp to light and may damage your fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 180*.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

### CAUTION:

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the gasoline vapor. You can be badly burned and your vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense gasoline only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.

CAUTION: (Continued)

### CAUTION: (Continued)

- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping gasoline.

## Checking Things Under the Hood

### CAUTION:

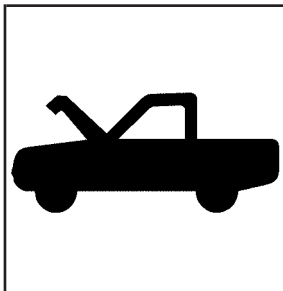
An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

### CAUTION:

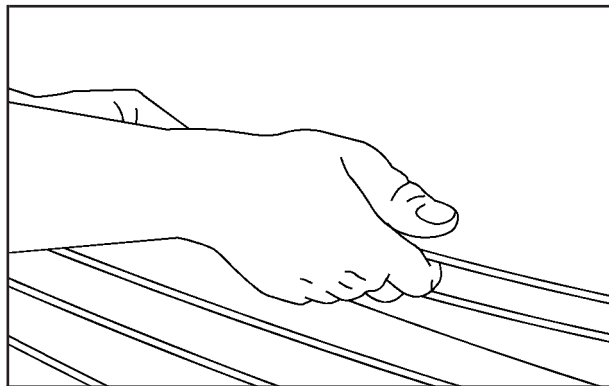
Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.

## Hood Release

To open the hood do the following:



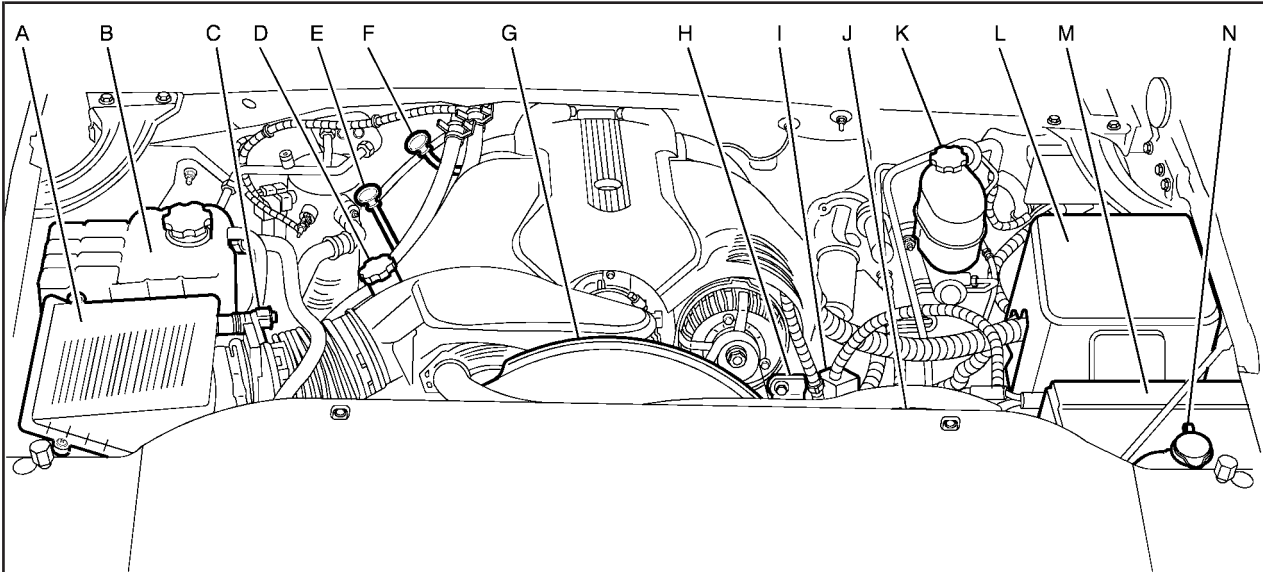
1. Pull the handle with this symbol on it. It is located inside the vehicle to the lower left of the steering wheel.



2. Then go to the front of the vehicle and pull up on the secondary hood release located near the center of the grille.
3. Lift the hood.  
Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then pull down the hood and close it firmly.

# Engine Compartment Overview

When you lift the hood on the VORTEC™ 6000 V8 engine, here is what you will see:



- A. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 341*.
- B. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 354* and *Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap on page 350*.
- C. Air Filter Restriction Indicator (If Equipped). See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 341*.
- D. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 336*.
- E. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 336*.
- F. Automatic Transmission Dipstick. See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 343*.
- G. Engine Cooling Fan. See *Cooling System on page 354*.
- H. Remote Negative (-) Terminal (GND). See *Jump Starting on page 366*.
- I. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 366*.
- J. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir. See *Power Steering Fluid on page 360*.
- K. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 362*.
- L. Underhood Fuse Block. See *Underhood Fuse Block on page 439*.
- M. Battery. See *Battery on page 365*.
- N. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 361*.

## Engine Oil

If the CHECK OIL LEVEL message appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC), it means you need to check the engine oil level right away. For more information, see CHECK OIL LEVEL under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 190*. You should check the engine oil level regularly; this is an added reminder.

### Checking Engine Oil

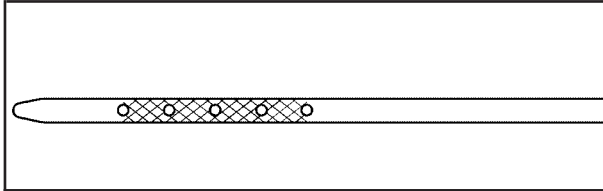
It is a good idea to check the engine oil every time you get fuel. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 334* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

1. Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If you do not do this, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

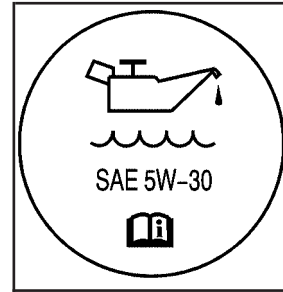


## When to Add Engine Oil



If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, you will need to add at least one quart/liter of oil. But you must use the right kind. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications* on page 444.

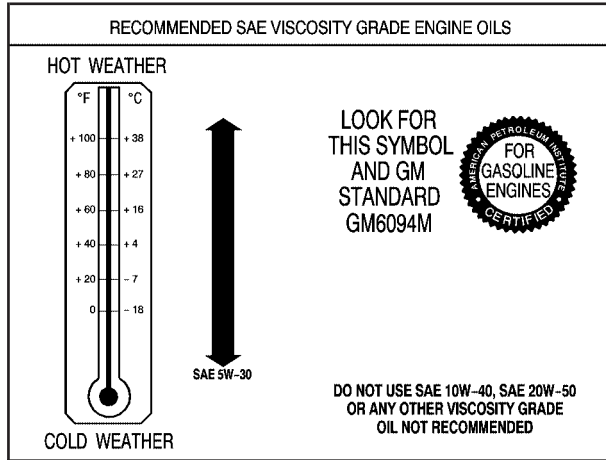
**Notice:** Do not add too much oil. If the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged.



See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 334 for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Be sure to add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when you are through.

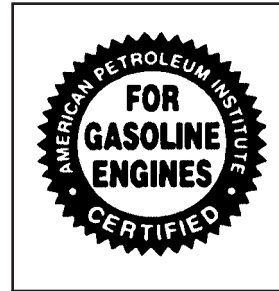
## What Kind of Engine Oil to Use



Look for two things:

- GM6094M  
Your vehicle's engine requires oil meeting GM Standard GM6094M. You should look for and use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM6094M.
- SAE 5W-30  
As shown in the viscosity chart, SAE 5W-30 is best for your vehicle.

These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.



Oils meeting these requirements should also have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

You should look for this information on the oil container, and use only those oils that are identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and have the starburst symbol on the front of the oil container.

**Notice:** Use only engine oil identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and showing the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by your warranty.

GM Goodwrench<sup>®</sup> oil meets all the requirements for your vehicle.

If you are in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), it is recommended that you use either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 oil. Both will provide easier cold starting and better protection for the engine at extremely low temperatures.

## **Engine Oil Additives**

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM Standard GM6094M are all you will need for good performance and engine protection.

## **Engine Oil Life System**

### **When to Change Engine Oil**

Your vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change will be indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, you must reset the system every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it will indicate that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL message will come on. Change your oil as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer has GM-trained service people who will perform this work using genuine GM parts and reset the system. It is also important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, you must change your oil at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

## How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The Engine Oil Life System calculates when to change your engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Anytime your oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where you change your oil prior to a CHANGE ENGINE OIL message being turned on, reset the system.

To reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message, see “Engine Oil Life System” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 186* for vehicles that have the DIC, or do the following:

1. Turn the ignition key to RUN with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal slowly three times within five seconds.

If the OIL LIFE RESET message flashes for 10 seconds, the system is resetting.

3. Turn the key to LOCK.

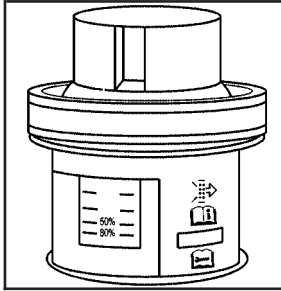
If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message comes back on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure. If it still does not reset, see your dealer for service.

## What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that may be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer’s warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Instead, recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil. If you have a problem properly disposing of your used oil, ask your dealer, a service station, or a local recycling center for help.

## Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 334* for the location of the engine air cleaner/filter and the air filter restriction indicator, if the vehicle has one.

### When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

If your vehicle has an air filter restriction indicator, it lets you know when the engine air cleaner/filter needs to be replaced. On vehicles with a restriction indicator, you should inspect the air filter restriction indicator at every oil change and replace the engine air cleaner/filter when the indicator tells you to.

On vehicles without an air filter restriction indicator, inspect the air cleaner/filter at the Maintenance II intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 50,000 mile (83 000 km) interval.

See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 449* for more information. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

### How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

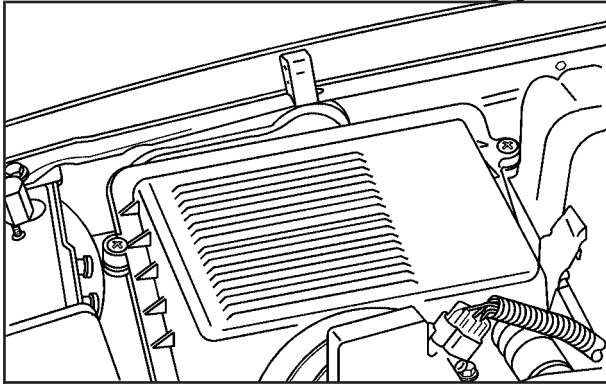
#### Vehicles With an Air Filter Restriction Indicator

Locate the air filter restriction indicator on the engine air cleaner/filter cover. When the indicator turns black or is in the red/orange “change” zone, replace the filter and reset the indicator. See the steps following to replace the engine air cleaner/filter and to reset the air filter restriction indicator.

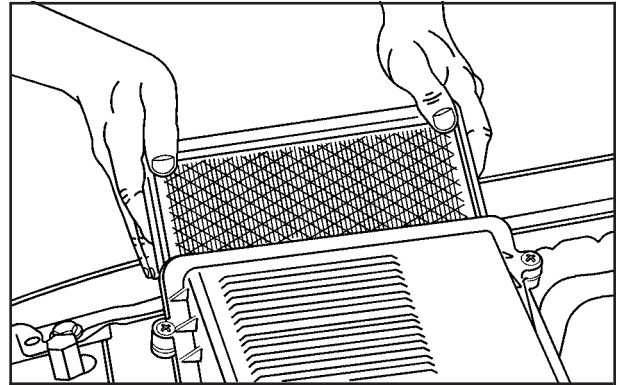
#### Vehicles Without an Air Filter Restriction Indicator

To inspect the air cleaner/filter, remove the engine air cleaner/filter from the vehicle using the steps following. When you have the engine air cleaner/filter removed, lightly shake it to release loose dust and dirt. If the engine air cleaner/filter remains caked with dirt, a new filter is required.

## Replacing the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter and Resetting the Air Filter Restriction Indicator



1. Locate the air cleaner/filter assembly on the front corner of the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle.
2. Loosen the screws on the cover of the housing and lift up the cover.



3. Remove the engine air cleaner/filter from the housing. Care should be taken not to dislodge dirt in the air cleaner.
4. Clean the engine air cleaner/filter sealing surfaces and the housing.
5. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
6. Reinstall the cover and tighten the screws.

7. Reset the air filter restriction indicator, if the vehicle has one, by pressing the button at the end of the indicator.

 **CAUTION:**

**Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. If it is not there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Do not drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.**

## **Automatic Transmission Fluid**

### **When to Check and Change Automatic Transmission Fluid**

A good time to check your automatic transmission fluid level is when the engine oil is changed.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Additional Required Services on page 452*, and be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 460*.

## How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

Because this operation can be a little difficult, you may choose to have this done at the dealership service department.

If you do it yourself, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or you could get a false reading on the dipstick.

**Notice:** Too much or too little fluid can damage your transmission. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine parts or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check your transmission fluid.

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transmission fluid level if you have been driving:

- When outside temperatures are above 90°F (32°C).
- At high speed for quite a while.
- In heavy traffic — especially in hot weather.
- While pulling a trailer.

To get the right reading, the fluid should be at normal operating temperature, which is 180°F to 200°F (82°C to 93°C).

Get the vehicle warmed up by driving about 15 miles (24 km) when outside temperatures are above 50°F (10°C). If it is colder than 50°F (10°C), drive the vehicle in THIRD (3) until the engine temperature gage moves and then remains steady for 10 minutes.



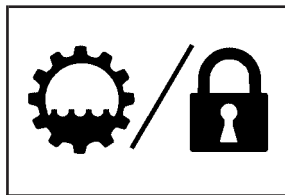
A cold fluid check can be made after the vehicle has been sitting for eight hours or more with the engine off, but this is used only as a reference. Let the engine run at idle for five minutes if outside temperatures are 50°F (10°C) or more. If it is colder than 50°F (10°C), you may have to idle the engine longer. Should the fluid level be low during this cold check, you must check the fluid hot before adding fluid. Checking the fluid hot will give you a more accurate reading of the fluid level.

## **Checking the Fluid Level**

Prepare your vehicle as follows:

1. Park your vehicle on a level place. Keep the engine running.
2. With the parking brake applied, place the shift lever in PARK (P).
3. With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, position the shift lever in PARK (P).
4. Let the engine run at idle for three minutes or more.

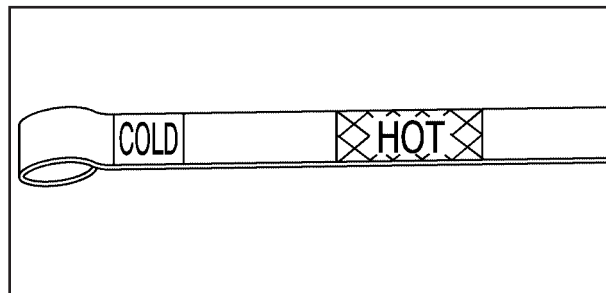
Then, without shutting off the engine, follow these steps:



The transmission dipstick handle is located at the rear of the engine compartment, on the passenger's side of the vehicle.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 334* for further information on location.

1. Flip the handle up and then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
2. Push it back in all the way, wait three seconds and then pull it back out again.



3. Check both sides of the dipstick, and read the lower level. The fluid level must be in the COLD area, below the cross-hatched area, for a cold check or in the HOT or cross-hatched area for a hot check. Be sure to keep the dipstick pointed down to get an accurate reading.
4. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

## How to Add Automatic Transmission Fluid

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of transmission fluid to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 460*.

Add fluid only after checking the transmission fluid while it is hot. A cold check is used only as a reference. If the fluid level is low, add only enough of the proper fluid to bring the level up to the HOT area for a hot check. It does not take much fluid, generally less than one pint (0.5 L). Do not overfill.

**Notice:** Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage your vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by your warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 460*.

- After adding fluid, recheck the fluid level as described under “How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid,” earlier in this section.
- When the correct fluid level is obtained, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

## Engine Coolant

The cooling system in your vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in your vehicle for five years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first, if you add only DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> extended life coolant.

The following explains your cooling system and how to add coolant when it is low. If you have a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 350*.

A 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant will:

- Give freezing protection down to -34°F (-37°C).
- Give boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).
- Protect against rust and corrosion.
- Help keep the proper engine temperature.
- Let the warning lights and gages work as they should.

**Notice:** Using coolant other than DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> may cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant may require changing sooner, at the first maintenance service after each 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> (silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.

## What to Use

Use a mixture of one-half clean, drinkable water and one-half DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant which will not damage aluminum parts. If you use this coolant mixture, you do not need to add anything else.

### CAUTION:

**Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant.**

**Notice:** If you use an improper coolant mixture, your engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by your warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.

If you have to add coolant more than four times a year, have your dealer check your cooling system.

**Notice:** If you use extra inhibitors and/or additives in your vehicle's cooling system, you could damage your vehicle. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 460* for more information.

## Checking Coolant

The coolant surge tank is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 334* for more information on location.

### CAUTION:

Turning the surge tank pressure cap when the engine and radiator are hot can allow steam and scalding liquids to blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — when the engine and radiator are hot.

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When your engine is cold, the coolant level should be at the FULL COLD mark.

## Adding Coolant

If you need more coolant, add the proper DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant mixture at the surge tank, but only when the engine is cool. See *Cooling System on page 354*.

### CAUTION:

**You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol, and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.**

When replacing the pressure cap, make sure it is hand-tight and fully seated.

## Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap

**Notice:** If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

The coolant surge tank pressure cap must be fully installed on the coolant surge tank. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 334* for more information on location.

## Engine Overheating

You will find a coolant temperature gage on your vehicle's instrument panel. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 178*.

In addition, you will find an ENGINE OVERHEATED, and a REDUCED ENGINE POWER message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) on the instrument panel. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 190*.

## If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

### CAUTION:

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

CAUTION: (Continued)

### CAUTION: (Continued)

If you keep driving when the vehicles engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop your engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 353* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

**Notice:** If your engine catches fire because you keep driving with no coolant, your vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by your warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 353* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

## If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

The ENGINE COOLANT HOT message, along with a low coolant condition, can indicate a serious problem.

If you get an engine overheat warning, but see or hear no steam, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when you:

- Climb a long hill on a hot day.
- Stop after high-speed driving.
- Idle for long periods in traffic.
- Tow a trailer. See *Towing a Trailer on page 304*.

If you get the ENGINE COOLANT HOT message with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. If your air conditioner is on, turn it off.
2. Turn on your heater to full hot at the highest fan speed and open the windows as necessary.
3. If you are in a traffic jam, shift to NEUTRAL (N); otherwise, shift to the highest gear while driving — DRIVE (D).

If you no longer have the overheat warning, you can drive. Just to be safe, drive slower for about 10 minutes. If the warning does not come back on, you can drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park your vehicle right away.



If there is still no sign of steam and your vehicle is equipped with an engine-driven cooling fan, push down the accelerator until the engine speed is about twice as fast as normal idle speed for at least three minutes while you are parked.

If there is still no sign of steam and your vehicle is equipped with an electric engine cooling fan, idle the engine for three minutes while you are parked.

If you still have the warning, turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle until it cools down. Also, see “Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode” later in this section.

You may decide not to lift the hood but to get service help right away.

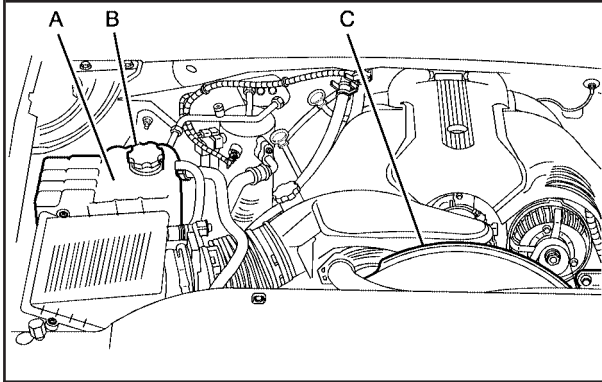
## Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

If an overheated engine condition exists and the REDUCED ENGINE POWER message is displayed, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, you will notice a loss in power and engine performance. This operating mode allows your vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

**Notice:** After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss, change the oil and reset the oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 336*.

## Cooling System

When you decide it is safe to lift the hood, here is what you will see:



- A. Coolant Surge Tank
- B. Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap
- C. Engine Cooling Fan

### CAUTION:

**An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.**

If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface. Check the coolant level after the system cools down. Some amount of coolant may be lost due to overheating.



The coolant level should be at or above the FULL COLD mark. If it is not, you may have a leak at the pressure cap or in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump or somewhere else in the cooling system.

 **CAUTION:**

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with an electric engine cooling fan, check the coolant temperature gage. If the coolant temperature is approximately 232°F (111°C), the electric cooling fan should be running. If it is not, your vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

If your vehicle is equipped with an engine-driven cooling fan, start the engine again and see if the fan speed increases when idle speed is doubled by pushing the accelerator pedal down. If it does not, your vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

**Notice:** Engine damage from running your engine without coolant is not covered by your warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 353* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

**Notice:** Using coolant other than DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> may cause premature engine, heater core or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant may require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> (silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.

## How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

If you have not found a problem yet, check to see if coolant is visible in the surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the FULL COLD mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it. See *Engine Coolant* on page 347 for more information.

### CAUTION:

**Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the coolant surge tank pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and coolant surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> coolant.

**Notice:** In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.



1. You can remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise about one full turn. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.

2. Then keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.



3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture, to the FULL COLD mark.



4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the FULL COLD mark.

5. Then replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight and fully seated.

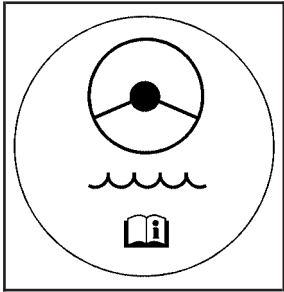
## Engine Fan Noise

If your vehicle has a clutched engine cooling fan, when the clutch is engaged, the fan spins faster to provide more air to cool the engine. In most everyday driving conditions, the fan is spinning slower and the clutch is not fully engaged. This improves fuel economy and reduces fan noise. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing, and/or high outside temperatures, the fan speed increases as the clutch more fully engages, so you may hear an increase in fan noise. This is normal and should not be mistaken as the transmission slipping or making extra shifts. It is merely the cooling system functioning properly. The fan will slow down when additional cooling is not required and the clutch disengages.

You may also hear this fan noise when you start the engine. It will go away as the fan clutch partially disengages.

If your vehicle has electric cooling fans, you may hear the fans spinning at low speed during most everyday driving. The fans may turn off if no cooling is required. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing, and/or high outside temperatures, or if you are operating your air conditioning system, the fans may change to high speed and you may hear an increase in fan noise. This is normal and indicates that the cooling system is functioning properly. The fans will change to low speed when additional cooling is no longer required.

## Power Steering Fluid



See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 334 for reservoir location.

### When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

## How to Check Power Steering Fluid

To check the power steering fluid, do the following:

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be at the FULL COLD mark. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level up to the mark.

### What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 460. Always use the proper fluid. Failure to use the proper fluid can cause leaks and damage hoses and seals.



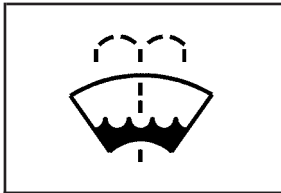
## Windshield Washer Fluid

### What to Use

When you need windshield washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

### Adding Washer Fluid

Your vehicle has a low washer fluid message that comes on when the washer fluid is low. The message is displayed for 15 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle. When the CHECK WASHER FLUID message is displayed, you will need to add washer fluid to the windshield washer fluid reservoir.



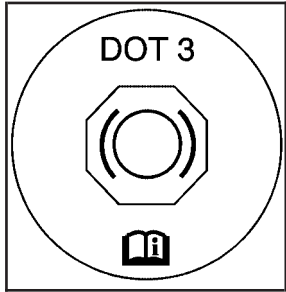
Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 334 for reservoir location.

### Notice:

- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.
- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.
- Fill your washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.
- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage your washer system and paint.

## Brakes

### Brake Fluid



Your brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT-3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 334 for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down. The first is that the brake fluid goes down to an acceptable level during normal brake lining wear. When new linings are put in, the fluid level goes back up. The other reason is that fluid is leaking out of the brake system. If it is, you should have your brake system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later your brakes will not work well, or will not work at all.

So, it is not a good idea to top off your brake fluid. Adding brake fluid will not correct a leak. If you add fluid when your linings are worn, then you will have too much fluid when you get new brake linings. You should add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

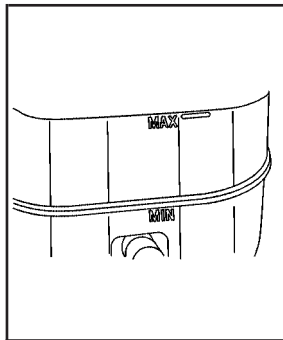
#### CAUTION:

**If you have too much brake fluid, it can spill on the engine. The fluid will burn if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and your vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system. See “Checking Brake Fluid” in this section.**

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to check your brake fluid. See *Scheduled Maintenance* on page 449.

## Checking Brake Fluid

You can check the brake fluid without taking off the cap.



Just look at the brake fluid reservoir. The fluid level should be above MIN. If it is not, have your brake system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake hydraulic system, make sure the level is above the MIN but not over the MAX mark.

## What to Add

When you do need brake fluid, use only DOT-3 brake fluid. Use new brake fluid from a sealed container only. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 460.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This will help keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

### CAUTION:

**With the wrong kind of fluid in your brake system, your brakes may not work well, or they may not even work at all. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.**

### **Notice:**

- Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.
- If you spill brake fluid on your vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on your vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See *Washing Your Vehicle* on page 427.

## Brake Wear

Your vehicle has front disc brakes and may have rear drum brakes or rear disc brakes.

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound may come and go or be heard all the time your vehicle is moving, except when you are pushing on the brake pedal firmly.

### CAUTION:

**The brake wear warning sound means that soon your brakes will not work well. That could lead to an accident. When you hear the brake wear warning sound, have your vehicle serviced.**

***Notice:*** Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with your brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to GM torque specifications.

If you have rear drum brakes, they do not have wear indicators, but if you ever hear a rear brake rubbing noise, have the rear brake linings inspected immediately. Rear brake drums should be removed and inspected each time the tires are removed for rotation or changing. Drum brakes have an inspection hole to inspect lining wear during scheduled maintenance. When you have the front brake pads replaced, have the rear brakes inspected, too.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

## Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign of brake trouble.

## Brake Adjustment

Every time you make a brake stop, your brakes adjust for wear.

## Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. Your vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality GM brake parts. When you replace parts of your braking system — for example, when your brake linings wear down and you need new ones put in — be sure you get new approved GM replacement parts. If you do not, your brakes may

no longer work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for your vehicle, the balance between your front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance you have come to expect can change in many other ways if someone puts in the wrong replacement brake parts.

## Battery

Your vehicle has a maintenance free battery. When it is time for a new battery, get one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. We recommend an ACDelco® replacement battery. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 334* for battery location.

**Warning:** Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

## Vehicle Storage

If you are not going to drive your vehicle for 25 days or more, remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery. This will help keep your battery from running down.

### CAUTION:

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 366* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

## Jump Starting

If your vehicle's battery (or batteries) has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

### CAUTION:

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

**Notice:** Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to your vehicle that would not be covered by your warranty.

**Trying to start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage your vehicle.**

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

**Notice:** If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put the automatic transmission in PARK (P) before setting the parking brake. If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear, not in NEUTRAL.

**Notice:** If you leave your radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always turn off your radio and other accessories when jump starting your vehicle.

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all the lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save the radio!

4. Open the hood on the other vehicle and locate the positive (+) and negative (-) terminal locations.

Your vehicle has a remote positive (+) jump starting terminal and a remote negative (-) jump starting terminal. You should always use these remote terminals instead of the terminals on the battery.

The remote positive (+) terminal is located near the engine accessory drive bracket. To uncover the remote positive (+) terminal, open the red plastic cover.

The remote negative (-) terminal is located on the engine drive bracket and is marked GND (Ground).

See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 334 for more information on location.

 **CAUTION:**

**An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.**

 **CAUTION:**

**Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.**

**Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.**

**Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.**



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.**

5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (-) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.

Do not connect positive (+) to negative (-) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.



6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the vehicle with the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

8. Now connect the black negative (-) cable to the negative (-) cable on the good battery. Use a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.

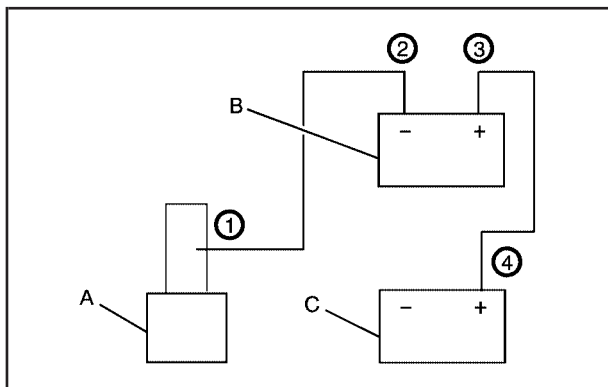
Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (-) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part on the vehicle with the dead battery, or to a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.



9. Connect the other end of the negative (-) cable to the remote negative (-) terminal, marked GND, on the vehicle with the dead battery.

10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

**Notice:** If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.



**Jumper Cable Removal**

- A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative Terminal
- B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (-) Terminals
- C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (-) cable from the vehicle that had the bad battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (-) cable from vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the positive (+) remote terminal cover to its original position.

## All-Wheel Drive

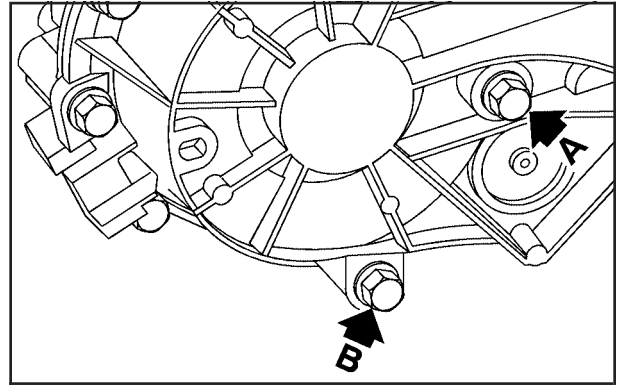
Lubricant checks in this section also apply to these vehicles. There are two additional systems that need lubrication.

### Transfer Case

#### When to Check Lubricant

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the lubricant. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 449*.

## How to Check Lubricant



**AWD Transfer Case (A) Fill Plug (B) Drain Plug**

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, you'll need to add some lubricant. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the plug.

## What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 460.

## Rear Axle

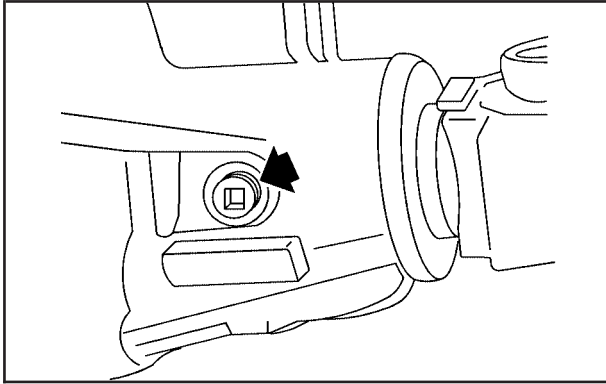
### When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check rear axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

All axle assemblies are filled by volume of fluid during production. They are not filled to reach a certain level. When checking the fluid level on

any axle, variations in the readings can be caused by factory fill differences between the minimum and the maximum fluid volume. Also, if a vehicle has just been driven before checking the fluid level, it may appear lower than normal because fluid has traveled out along the axle tubes and has not drained back to the sump area. Therefore, a reading taken five minutes after the vehicle has been driven will appear to have a lower fluid level than a vehicle that has been stationary for an hour or two. Remember that the rear axle assembly must be supported to get a true reading.

## How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

The proper level is from 5/8 inch to 1 5/8 inch (15 mm to 40 mm) below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the rear axle. Add only enough fluid to reach the proper level.

## What to Use

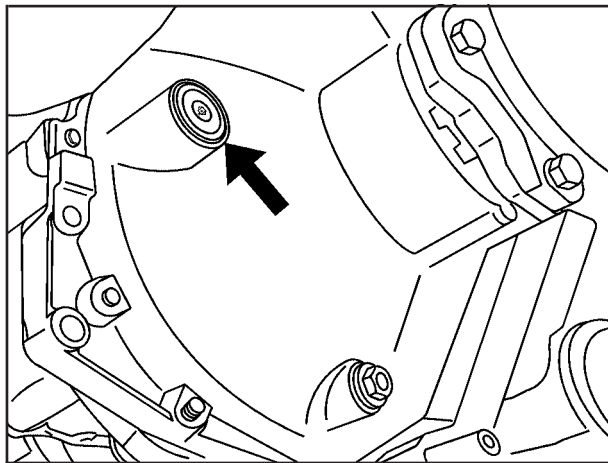
To determine what kind of lubricant to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 460*.

## Front Axle

### When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check front axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

## How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, you may need to add some lubricant:

- When the differential is cold, add enough lubricant to raise the level to 0 to 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) below the filler plug hole.
- When the differential is at operating temperature (warm), add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole.

### What to Use

To determine what kind of lubricant to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 460*.

## Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 382*.

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

## Halogen Bulbs

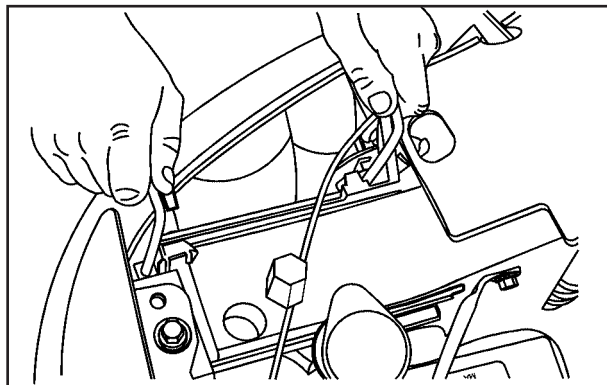
### CAUTION:

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

## Headlamps

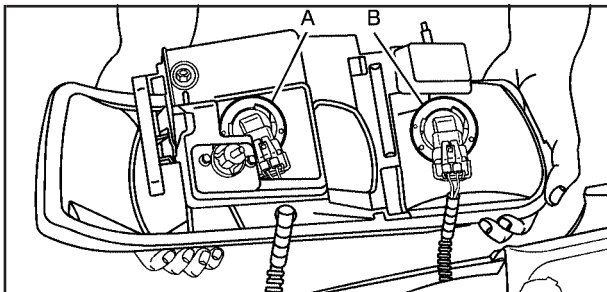
To replace a headlamp bulb, do the following:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood Release on page 333* for more information.



2. Remove the two pins on the top of the headlamp assembly. To remove the outer pin, turn outward and pull it straight up. To remove the inner pin, turn it in and pull it straight up.

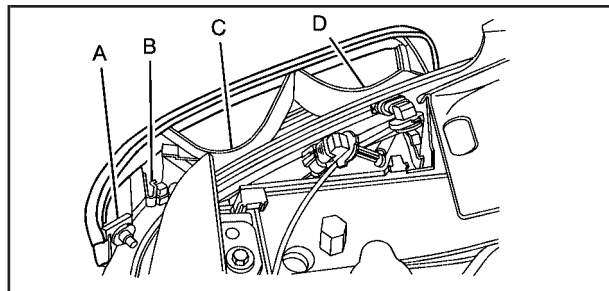




A. Low-Beam Headlamp  
B. High-Beam Headlamp

3. Pull the headlamp assembly out.
4. Unplug the electrical connector.
5. Turn the old bulb counterclockwise and remove it from the headlamp assembly.
6. Put the new bulb into the assembly and turn it clockwise until it is tight.
7. Plug in the electrical connector.
8. Reinstall the headlamp assembly.
9. Reinstall and tighten the two pins.

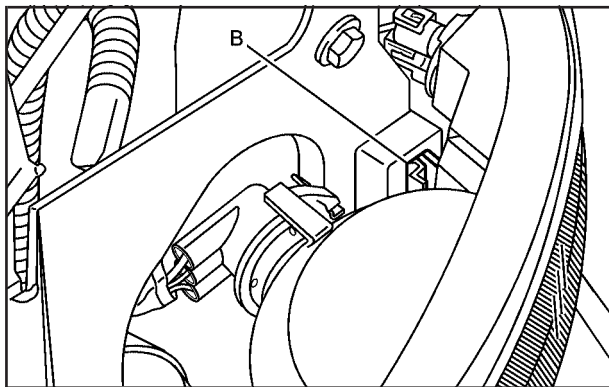
## Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime Running Lamps



A. Sidemarker Lamp    C. Front Turn Signal Lamp  
B. Retainer Clip        D. Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)

To replace a front turn signal, sidemarker or DRL bulb, do the following:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood Release on page 333* for more information.
2. Remove the headlamp assembly as described previously. See *Headlamps on page 376* for more information.



3. Press the retainer clip (B), located behind the turn signal assembly, towards the outside of the vehicle.
4. Pull the turn signal assembly out of the vehicle.

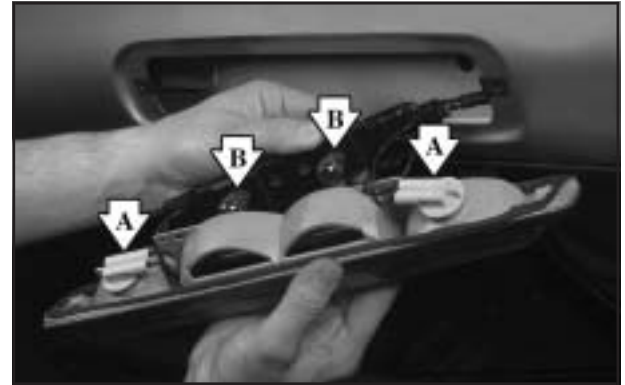
5. Press the locking release lever, turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the turn signal assembly.
6. Remove the old bulb from the bulb socket.
7. Install a new bulb into the bulb socket.
8. Insert the bulb socket into the turn signal assembly and turn it clockwise until it locks.
9. Reinstall the turn signal assembly back into the vehicle placing the hook and posts on the inner side into the alignment holes first, then the outer side into the retainer bracket until you hear a click.
10. Reinstall the headlamp assembly.

## Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) and Cargo Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs, do the following:



1. Remove the screws and lift off the lamp assembly.



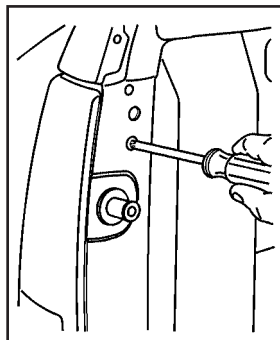
- A. Cargo Lamp
  - B. Center High-Mounted Stoplamp Bulb
2. Remove the back plate from the assembly by pressing the release tabs.
  3. Remove the CHMSL bulb by pulling the bulb straight out from the holder back plate.  
Remove a cargo bulb by turning the socket counterclockwise and pulling the bulb straight out.

4. If a CHMSL bulb is replaced, put the new bulb into the socket and press it in until it is tight.  
If a cargo lamp is replaced, put a new cargo lamp bulb into the socket and press it in until it is tight before turning the socket counterclockwise.
5. Reinstall the back plate into the lamp assembly.
6. Reinstall the lamp assembly and tighten the screws.

## Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps

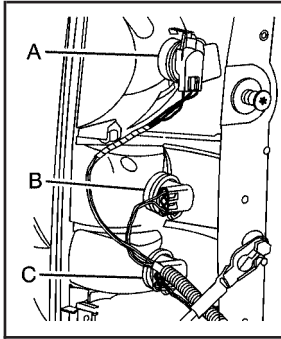
To replace a taillamp bulb, do the following:

1. Open the tailgate. See *Tailgate* on page 92 for more information.

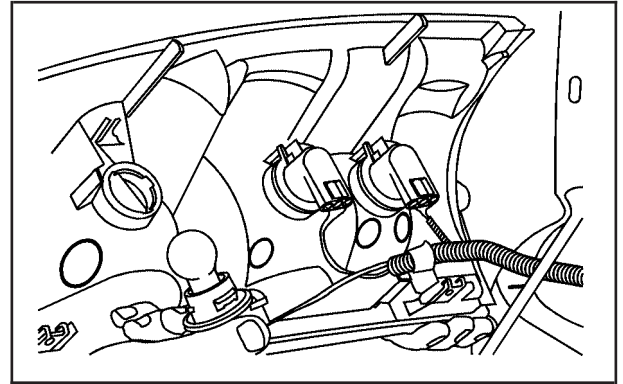


2. Remove the two taillamp assembly screws near the tailgate latch.

3. Pull out the taillamp assembly.



- A. Stoplamp
- B. Turn Signal
- C. Back-up Lamp

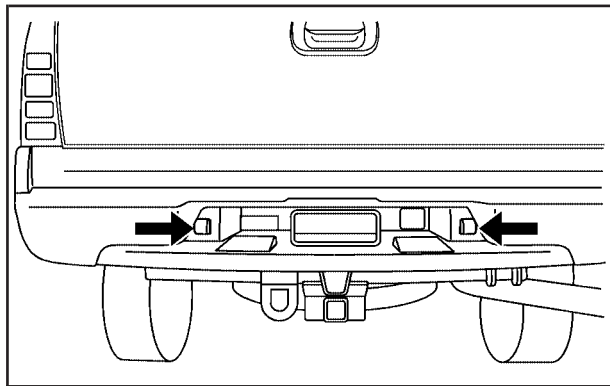


4. Press the release tab, if the vehicle has one, and turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the taillamp housing.
5. Pull the old bulb straight out from the socket.
6. Press a new bulb into the socket and turn the socket clockwise into the taillamp housing until it clicks.
7. Reinstall the taillamp assembly.

## License Plate Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs, do the following:

1. Reach under the rear bumper for the bulb socket.



2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull the bulb socket out of the connector.
3. Pull the old bulb from the bulb socket, keeping the bulb straight as you pull it out.
4. Install the new bulb.
5. Reverse Steps 1 through 3 to reinstall the bulb socket.

## Replacement Bulbs

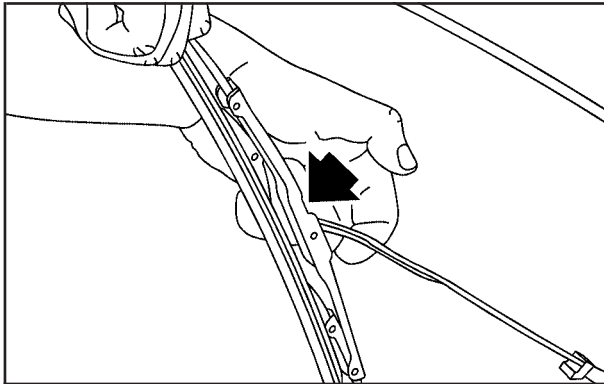
Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Back-up, Front and Rear Turn Signal, Taillamp and Stoplamps	3157
Cargo Lamps and Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)	912
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)	4114K
License Plate Lamp	168
Headlamps	
High-Beam	9005
Low-Beam	9005 or 9005 LL (Long Life)

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

## Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

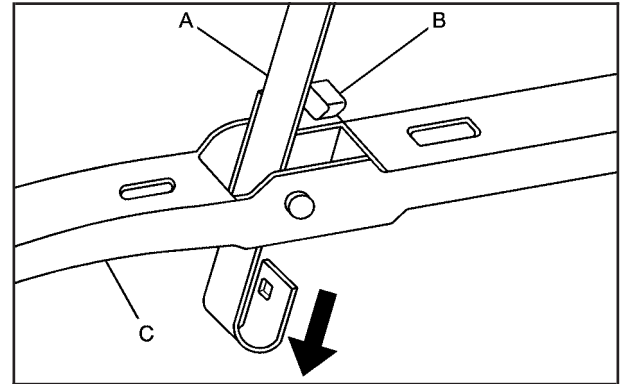
Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear and cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 449* for more information.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 462*.



To replace the windshield wiper blade assembly do the following:

1. Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield.



2. Push the release lever (B) to disengage the hook and push the wiper arm (A) out of the blade (C).
3. Push the new wiper blade securely on the wiper arm until you hear the release lever click into place.

## Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your GM Warranty booklet for details. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer's booklet included with your vehicle.



### CAUTION:

Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.

- **Overloading your vehicle's tires can cause overheating as a result of too much friction. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296.***

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

### CAUTION: (Continued)

- **Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your vehicle's tires are cold. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393.***
- **Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.**
- **Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If the tire's tread is badly worn, or if your vehicle's tires have been damaged, replace them.**

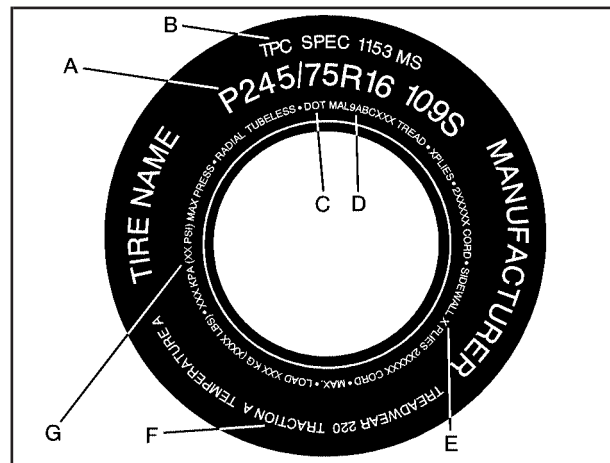


## 20-Inch Tires

If your vehicle has the optional 20-inch P275/55R20 size tires, they are classified as touring tires and are designed for on road use. The low-profile, wide tread design is not recommended for off-road driving. See *Off-Road Driving on page 265*, for additional information.

## Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into the sidewall. The following illustrations are examples of a typical P-Metric and a LT-Metric tire sidewall.



**Passenger (P-Metric) Tire**

**(A) Tire Size:** The tire size code is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

**(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification):** Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

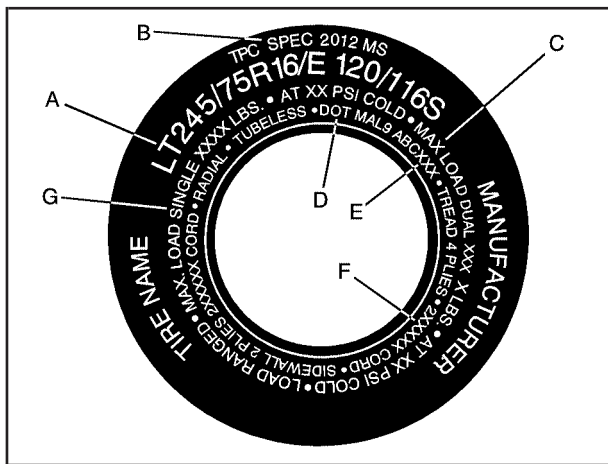
**(C) DOT (Department of Transportation):** The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

**(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN):** The letters and numbers following DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

**(E) Tire Ply Material:** The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

**(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG):** Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information, see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 399*.

**(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit:** Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.



Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire

**(A) Tire Size:** The tire size code is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

**(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification):** Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

**(C) Dual Tire Maximum Load:** Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load when used in a dual configuration. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.

**(D) DOT (Department of Transportation):** The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

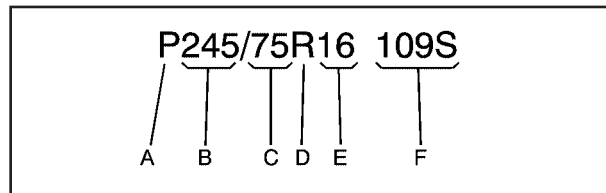
**(E) Tire Identification Number (TIN):** The letters and numbers following DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

**(F) Tire Ply Material:** The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

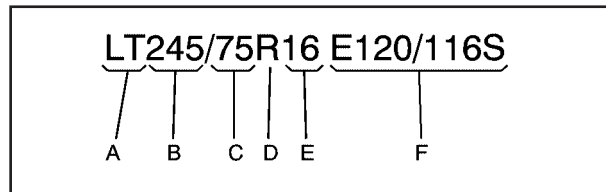
**(G) Single Tire Maximum Load:** Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load when used as a single. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.

## Tire Size

The following examples show the different parts of a tire size.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire



Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire

**(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire:** The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

**(A) Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire:** The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letters LT as the first two characters in the tire size means a light truck tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

**(B) Tire Width:** The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

**(C) Aspect Ratio:** A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 75, as shown in item C of the light truck (LT-Metric) tire illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 75 percent as high as it is wide.

**(D) Construction Code:** A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

**(E) Rim Diameter:** Diameter of the wheel in inches.

**(F) Service Description:** The service description indicates the load range and speed rating of a tire. The load index can range from 1 to 279. Speed ratings range from A to Z.

## Tire Terminology and Definitions

**Air Pressure:** The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

**Accessory Weight:** This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission/transaxle, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

**Aspect Ratio:** The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

**Belt:** A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

**Bead:** The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

**Bias Ply Tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Cold Tire Pressure:** The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393*.

**Curb Weight:** This means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

**DOT Markings:** A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

**GVWR:** Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.

**GAWR FRT:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.

**GAWR RR:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.

**Intended Outboard Sidewall:** The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

**Kilopascal (kPa):** The metric unit for air pressure.

**Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire:** A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

**Load Index:** An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure:** The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire may be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

**Maximum Load Rating:** The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight:** The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

**Normal Occupant Weight:** The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg). See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.

**Occupant Distribution:** Designated seating positions.

**Outward Facing Sidewall:** The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

**Passenger (P-Metric) Tire:** A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure:** Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.

**Radial Ply Tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Rim:** A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

**Sidewall:** The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

**Speed Rating:** An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

**Traction:** The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

**Tread:** The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

**Treadwear Indicators:** Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 396*.

**UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards):** A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 399*.

**Vehicle Capacity Weight:** The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg) plus the rated cargo load. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.

**Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire:** Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

**Vehicle Placard:** A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle's capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See "Tire and Loading Information Label" under *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.



## Inflation - Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

**Notice:** Do not let anyone tell you that under-inflation or over-inflation is all right. It is not. If your tires do not have enough air (under-inflation), you can get the following:

- Too much flexing
- Too much heat
- Tire overloading
- Premature or irregular wear
- Poor handling
- Reduced fuel economy

If your tires have too much air (over-inflation), you can get the following:

- Unusual wear
- Poor handling
- Rough ride
- Needless damage from road hazards

A Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar), below the driver's door lock post (striker). This label lists your vehicle's original equipment tires and their recommended cold tire inflation pressures. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, shown on the label, is the minimum amount of air pressure needed to support your vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight your vehicle can carry, and an example of the tire and loading information label, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.

### When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more. Do not forget to check the spare tire. For additional information regarding the spare tire, see *Spare Tire on page 422*.

## How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gage.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

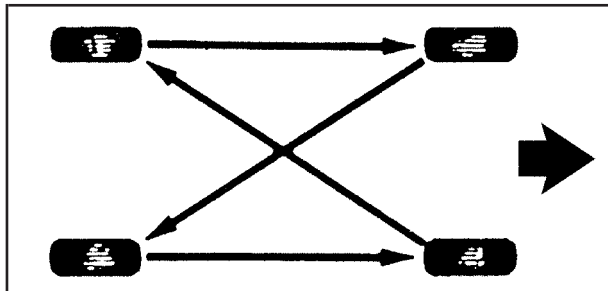
## Tire Inspection and Rotation

Tires should be rotated every 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km).

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 396* and *Wheel Replacement on page 401* for more information.

Make sure the spare tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to rotate or turn the tire. If it moves, use the ratchet/wheel wrench to tighten the cable. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 404*.

The purpose of regular rotation is to achieve more uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. The first rotation is the most important. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 449*.



When rotating your vehicle's tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Do not include the spare tire in the tire rotation.

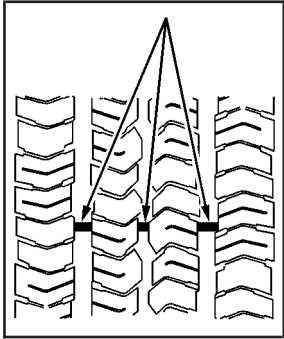
After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the tire and loading information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393*, for more information.

Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See "Wheel Nut Torque" under *Capacities and Specifications on page 444*.

### CAUTION:

**Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 404*.**

## When It Is Time for New Tires



One way to tell when it is time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which will appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining. Some commercial truck tires may not have treadwear indicators.

You need a new tire if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

## Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for your vehicle. The original equipment tires installed on your vehicle, when it was new, were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC spec) system rating. If you need replacement tires, GM strongly recommends that you get tires with the same TPC Spec rating. This way, your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give the same performance and vehicle safety, during normal use, as the original tires.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of your vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall by the tire manufacturer. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC spec number will be followed by an MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 385* for additional information.

 **CAUTION:**

Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes, brands, or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes, brands or types may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the same size, brand, and type tires on all wheels.

Your vehicle may have a different size spare than the road tires (those originally installed on your vehicle). When new, your vehicle included a spare tire and wheel assembly with a similar overall diameter as your vehicle's road tires and wheels, so it is all right to drive on it. Because this spare was developed for use on your vehicle, it will not affect vehicle handling.

 **CAUTION:**

If you use bias-ply tires on your vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on your vehicle.

If you must replace your vehicle's tires with those that do not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction type (radial and bias-belted tires) as your vehicle's original tires.

Your vehicle's original equipment tires are listed on the Tire and Loading Information Label. This label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). See *Loading Your Vehicle* on page 296, for more information about the Tire and Loading Information Label and its location on your vehicle.

## Different Size Tires and Wheels

If you add wheels or tires that are a different size than your original equipment wheels and tires, this may affect the way your vehicle performs, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover. Additionally, if your vehicle has electronic systems such as, anti-lock brakes, traction control, and electronic stability control, the performance of these systems can be affected.

### CAUTION:

**If you add different sized wheels, your vehicle may not provide an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. You may increase the chance that you will crash and suffer serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for your vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.**

See *Buying New Tires* on page 396 and *Accessories and Modifications* on page 324 for additional information.

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

### **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

## Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### **Traction – AA, A, B, C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**Warning:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**Warning:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling to one side or the other, the alignment may need to be checked. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your tires and wheels may need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.



## Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for your vehicle.

### CAUTION:

**Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.**

***Notice:*** The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.

See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 404* for more information.

## Used Replacement Wheels

### CAUTION:

Putting a used wheel on your vehicle is dangerous. You cannot know how it has been used or how far it has been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

## Tire Chains

### CAUTION:

Do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash. Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on your vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, re-adjust or remove the device if it is contacting your vehicle, and do not spin your wheels. If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the rear tires.

## If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while you are driving, especially if you maintain your vehicle's tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire will create a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you would use in a skid. In any rear blowout remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

### CAUTION:

**Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. The jack provided with your vehicle is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. Use the jack provided with your vehicle only for changing a flat tire.**

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use the jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

## Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on your vehicle's hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 144* for more information.

### CAUTION:

**Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall on you or other people. You and they could be badly injured or even killed. Find a level place to change your tire.**

**To help prevent the vehicle from moving:**

1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put the shift lever in PARK (P).
3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.

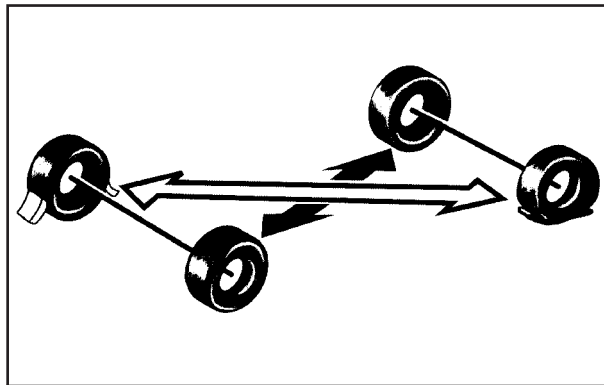
**To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, you should put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

### CAUTION: (Continued)

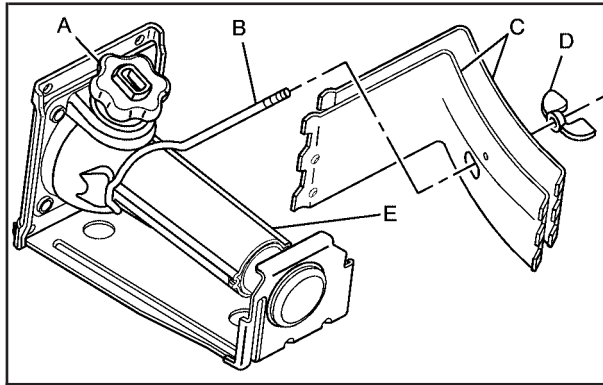
**from the one being changed. That would be the tire, on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.**

When your vehicle has a flat tire, use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks.



The following information will tell you next how to use the jack and change a tire.

## Removing the Spare Tire and Tools



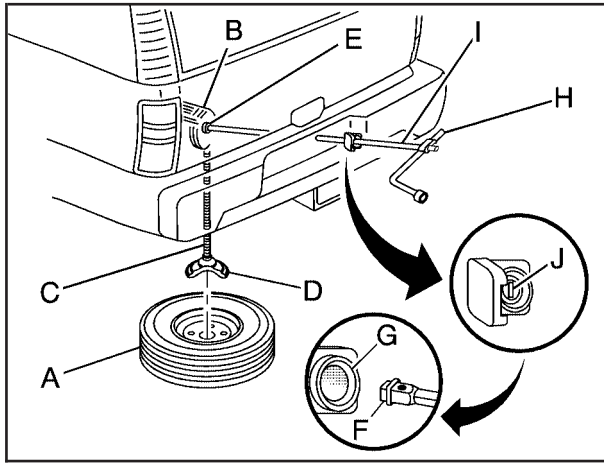
1500 Crew Cab

- |                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| A. Knob           | D. Wing Nut Retaining |
| B. Retaining Hook | Wheel Blocks          |
| C. Wheel Blocks   | E. Jack               |

For crew cab models, the equipment is on the shelf behind the passenger's side second row seat.

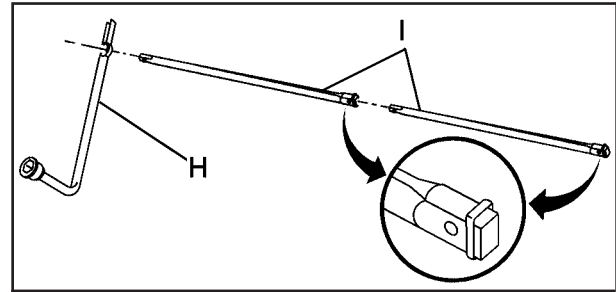
1. If there is a cover, move the seats forward and turn the wing nut on the cover counterclockwise to remove it. For crew cab models, pull up the second row seat with the loop at the base of the seat cushion to access the tools.
2. Turn the knob on the jack counterclockwise to lower the jack head to release the jack from its holder.
3. Remove the wheel blocks and the wheel block retainer by turning the wing nut counterclockwise.
4. Remove the wing nut used to retain the storage bag and tools by turning it counterclockwise.

You will use the jack handle extensions and the wheel wrench to remove the underbody-mounted spare tire.

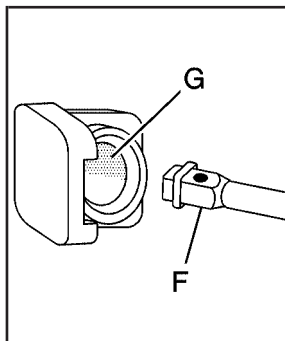


- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| A. Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Down) | G. Hoist Shaft Access Hole       |
| B. Hoist Assembly                       | H. Wheel Wrench                  |
| C. Hoist Cable                          | I. Jack Handle Extensions        |
| D. Tire/Wheel Retainer                  | J. Spare Tire Lock (If Equipped) |
| E. Hoist Shaft                          |                                  |
| F. Hoist End of Extension Tool          |                                  |

1. Open the spare tire lock cover on the bumper and use the ignition key to remove the lock, if equipped with a spare tire lock (J). To remove the spare tire lock, insert the key, turn and pull straight out.



2. Assemble the wheel wrench (H) and the two jack handle extensions (I) as shown.

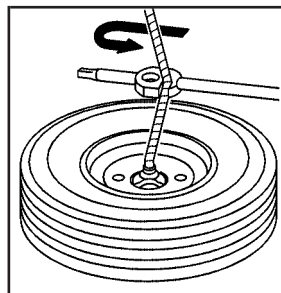


3. Insert the hoist end (open end) (F) of the extension through the hole (G) in the rear bumper.

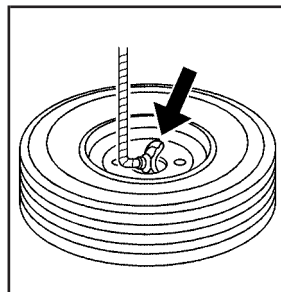
Be sure the hoist end of the extension (F) connects to the hoist shaft (E). The ribbed square end of the extension is used to lower the spare tire.

4. Turn the wheel wrench (H) counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.

If the spare tire does not lower to the ground, the secondary latch is engaged causing the tire not to lower. See *Secondary Latch System* on page 415.



5. Use the wheel wrench hook which allows you to pull the hoist cable towards you to assist in reaching the spare tire.

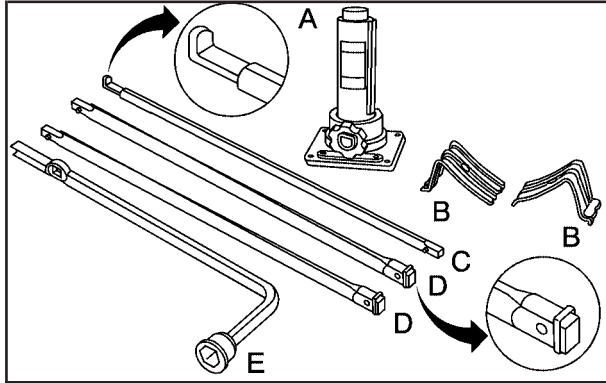


6. Tilt the retainer (D) at the end of the cable (C) when the tire has been lowered, so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.

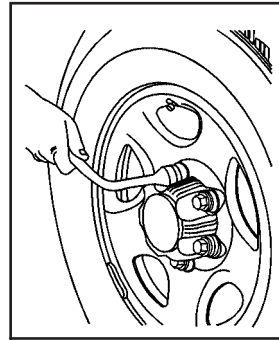
7. Put the spare tire near the flat tire.

## Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

Use the following pictures and instructions to remove the flat tire and raise the vehicle.



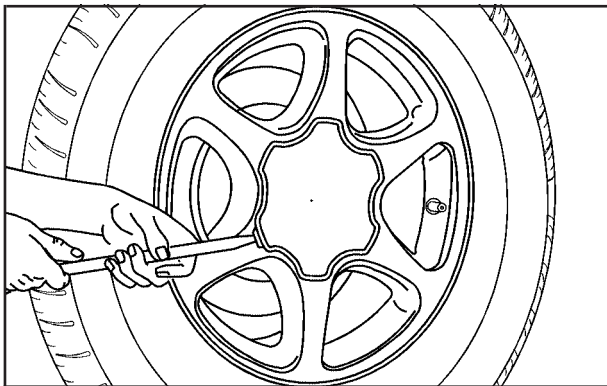
The tools you will be using include the jack (A), the wheel blocks (B), the jack handle (C), the jack handle extensions (D), and the wheel wrench (E).



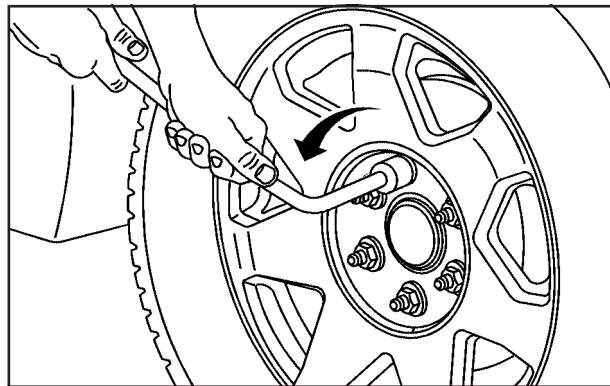
1. If your vehicle has wheel nut caps, loosen them by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise.

If the vehicle has a center cap with wheel nut caps, the wheel nut caps are designed to stay with the center cap after they are loosened. Remove the entire center cap.

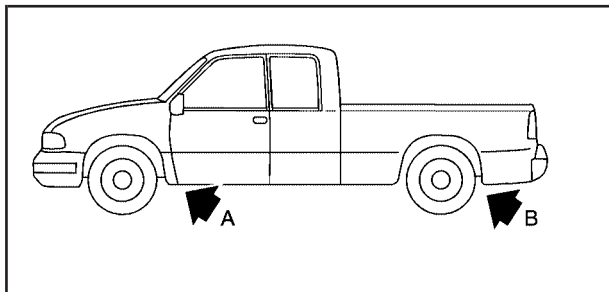




If the wheel has a smooth center cap, place the chisel end of the wheel wrench in the slot on the wheel, and gently pry it out.



2. Use the wheel wrench and turn it counterclockwise to loosen the wheel nuts. Do not remove the wheel nuts yet.



### Jacking Locations

- A. Front Location
- B. Rear Location

3. Position the jack under the vehicle as shown. If the flat tire is on the front of the vehicle, position the jack on the frame behind the flat tire.

If the flat tire is on the rear, position the jack under the rear axle between the spring anchor and the shock absorber bracket.

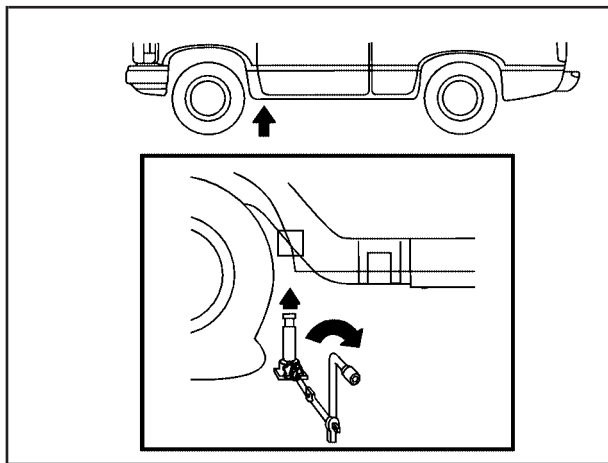
If you have added a snow plow to the front of your vehicle, lower the snow plow fully before raising the vehicle.

### CAUTION:

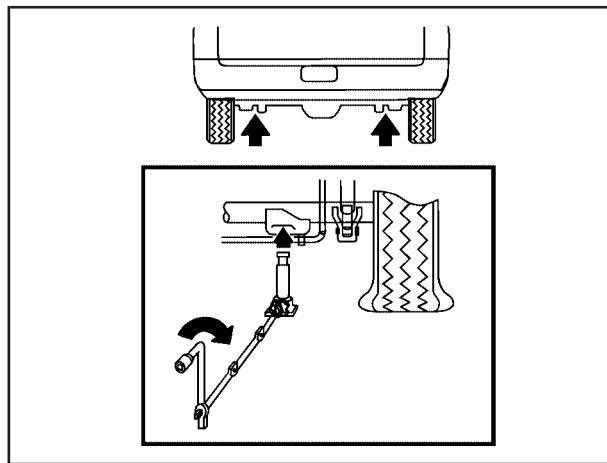
Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

### CAUTION:

Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

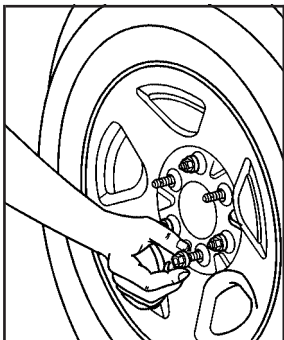


**Front Position - All Models**

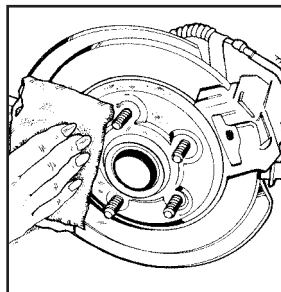


**Rear Position – All Models**

4. Make sure the jack head is positioned so that the rear axle is resting securely between the grooves that are on the jack head.
5. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to fit under the wheel well.



6. Remove all the wheel nuts and take off the flat tire.



7. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.

8. Install the spare tire.

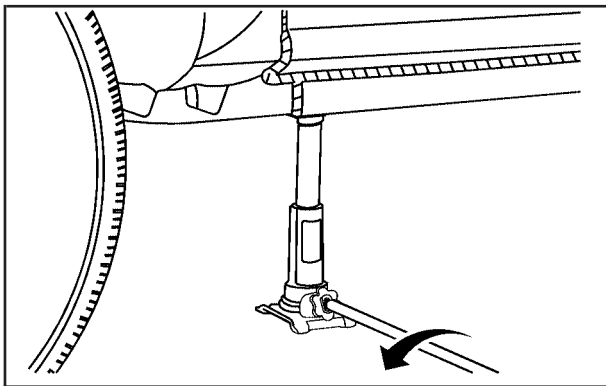
**⚠ CAUTION:**

Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off.

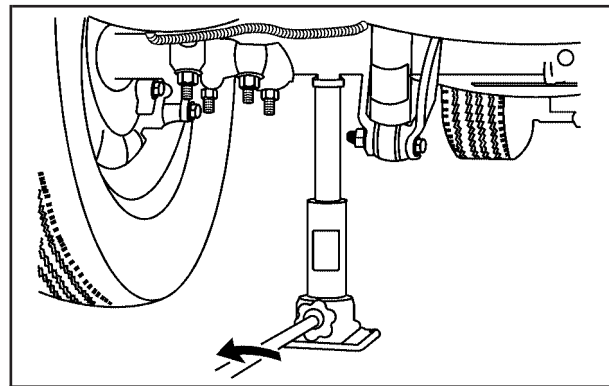
**⚠ CAUTION:**

Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. If you do, the nuts might come loose. Your wheel could fall off, causing a serious accident.

9. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel.
10. Tighten each wheel nut by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.



**Front Position - All Models**



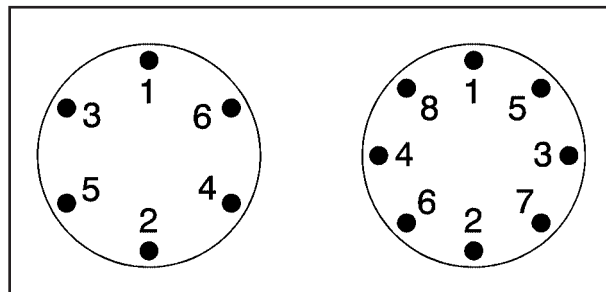
**Rear Position**

11. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle. Lower the jack completely.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to come loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts. Stop somewhere as soon as you can and have the nuts tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 444* for wheel nut torque specification.

**Notice:** Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 444* for the wheel nut torque specification.



12. Tighten the nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown by turning the wheel wrench clockwise.

When you reinstall the regular wheel and tire, you must also reinstall either the center cap, or bolt-on hub cap, depending on what your vehicle is equipped with. For center caps, place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it seats flush with the wheel. The cap only goes on one way. Be sure to line up the tab on the center cap with the indentation on the wheel. For bolt-on hub caps, align the plastic nut caps with the wheel nuts and then tighten by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten.

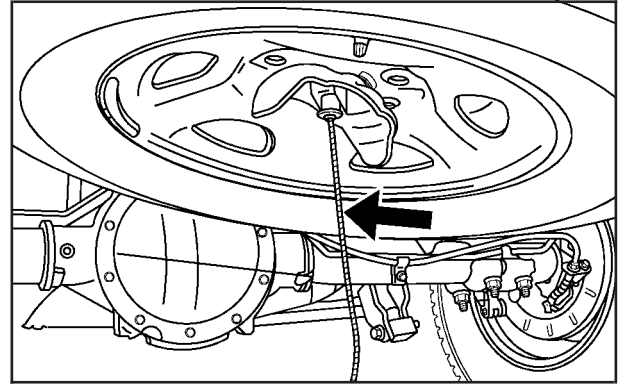
## Secondary Latch System

Your vehicle has an underbody-mounted tire hoist assembly that has a secondary latch system. It is designed to stop the spare tire from suddenly falling off your vehicle. For the secondary latch to work, the spare must be installed with the valve stem pointing down. See *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 418*.

### CAUTION:

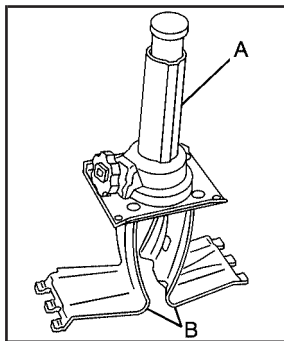
**Before beginning this procedure read all the instructions. Failure to read and follow the instructions could damage the hoist assembly and you and others could get hurt. Read and follow the instructions listed next.**

To release the spare tire from the secondary latch, do the following:

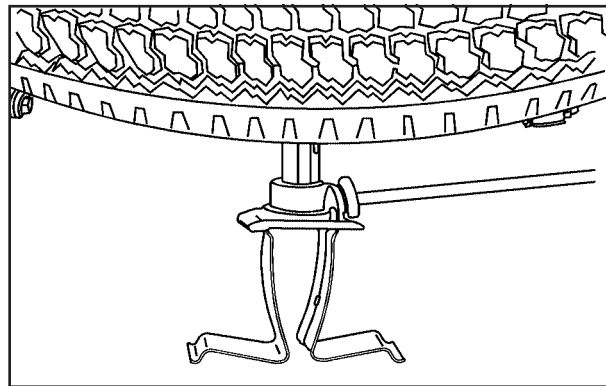


1. Check under the vehicle to see if the cable end is visible.  
If the cable is not visible, proceed to Step 6.
2. If it is visible, first try to tighten the cable by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.
3. Loosen the cable by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise three or four turns.

4. Repeat this procedure at least two times. If the spare tire lowers to the ground, continue with Step 5 of *Removing the Spare Tire and Tools on page 405*.
5. Turn the wrench counterclockwise until approximately 6 inches (15 cm) of cable is exposed.
6. Stand the wheel blocks on their shortest ends, with the backs facing each other.

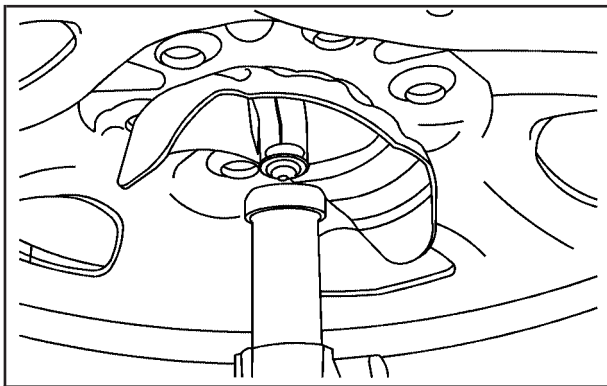


7. Place the bottom edge of the jack (A) on the wheel blocks (B), separating them so that the jack is balanced securely.



8. Attach the jack handle, extension, and wheel wrench to the jack and place it (with the wheel blocks) under the vehicle towards the front of the rear bumper.





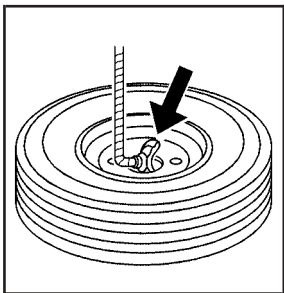
9. Position the center lift point of the jack under the center of the spare tire.
10. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the jack until it lifts the end fitting.
11. Continue raising the jack until the spare tire stops moving upward and is held firmly in place. The secondary latch has released and the spare tire is balancing on the jack.
12. Lower the jack by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise. Keep lowering the jack until the spare tire slides off the jack or is hanging by the cable.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Someone standing too close during the procedure could be injured by the jack. If the spare tire does not slide off the jack completely, make sure no one is behind you or on either side of you as you pull the jack out from under the spare.**

13. Disconnect the jack handle from the jack. Carefully remove the jack from underneath the vehicle.
14. Use one hand to push against the spare while firmly pulling the jack out from under the spare tire with the other hand.

If the spare tire is hanging from the cable, insert the hoist handle, extension, and wheel wrench into the hoist shaft hole in the bumper and turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare the rest of the way.



15. Tilt the retainer at the end of the cable and pull it through the wheel opening. Pull the tire out from under the vehicle.

16. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the cable back up if the cable is hanging under the vehicle.

Have the hoist assembly inspected as soon as you can. You will not be able to store a spare or flat tire using the hoist assembly until it has been replaced.

To continue changing the flat tire, see *Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire* on page 408.

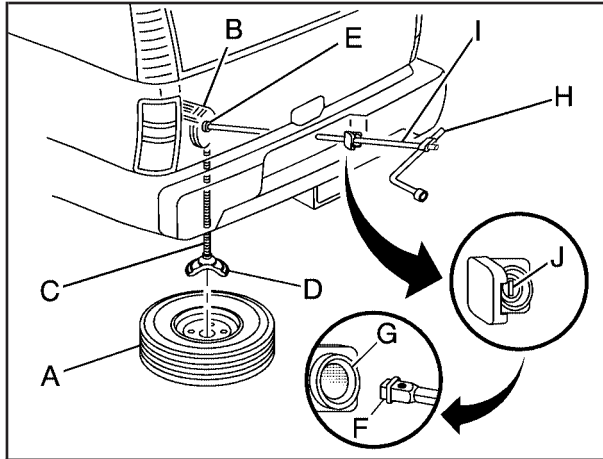
## Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

### CAUTION:

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

**Notice:** Storing an aluminum wheel with a flat tire under your vehicle for an extended period of time or with the valve stem pointing up may damage the wheel. Always stow the wheel with the valve stem pointing down and have the wheel/tire repaired as soon as possible.

Store the tire under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tire carrier. Use the following art and text to assist you:



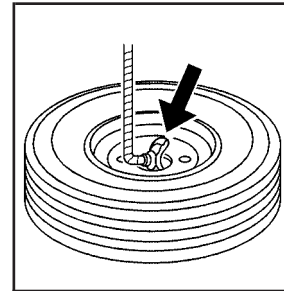
- A. Spare Tire  
(Valve Stem  
Pointed Down)
- B. Hoist Assembly
- C. Hoist Cable

- D. Tire/Wheel  
Retainer
- E. Hoist Shaft
- F. Hoist End of  
Extension Tool

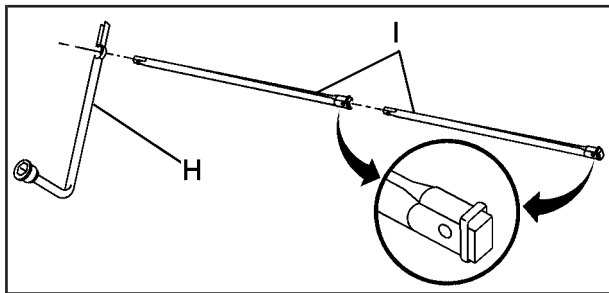
- G. Hoist Shaft  
Access Hole
- H. Wheel Wrench

- I. Jack Handle  
Extensions
- J. Spare Tire Lock  
(If Equipped)

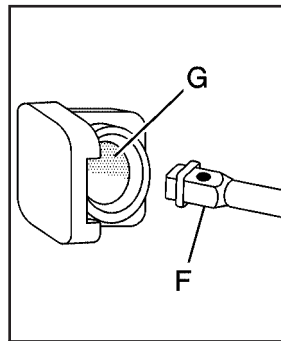
1. Put the tire on the ground at the rear of the vehicle with the valve stem pointed down, and to the rear.



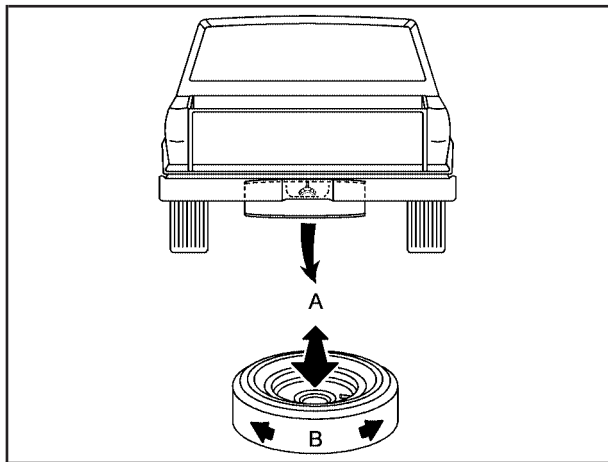
2. Tilt the retainer (D) downward and through the wheel opening. Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.



3. Attach the wheel wrench (H) and extensions (I) as shown.

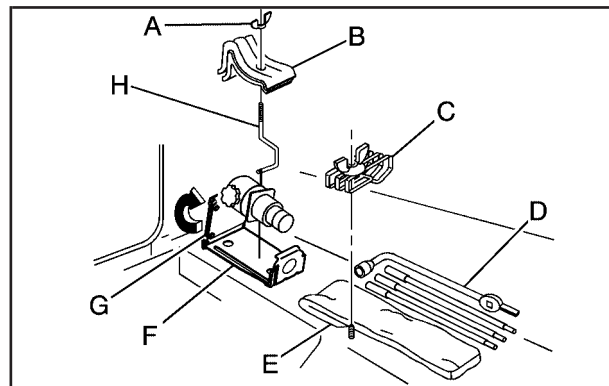


4. Insert the hoist end (F) through the hole (G) in the rear bumper. Be sure the hoist end of the extension (F) connects to the hoist shaft (E). The ribbed square end of the extension is used to lower the spare tire.
5. Raise the tire part way upward. Make sure the retainer (D) is seated in the wheel opening.
6. Raise the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.



7. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull (A), and then try to turn (B) the tire. If the tire moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable.
8. Reinstall the spare tire lock (if equipped).

To store the jack and jack tools, do the following:



- |                                   |                     |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| A. Wing Nut                       | E. Tool Bag         |
| B. Wheel Blocks                   | F. Mounting Bracket |
| C. Retaining Bracket and Wing Nut | G. Jack             |
| D. Wheel Wrench and Extensions    | H. Retaining Hook   |

1. Put the tools (D) in the tool bag (E) and place them in the retaining bracket (C).
2. Tighten down the wing nut (C).

3. Assemble the wheel blocks (B) and jack (G) together with the wing nut (A) and retaining hook (H).
4. Position the jack (G) in the mounting bracket (F). Position the holes in the base of the jack (G) onto the pin in the mounting bracket (F).
5. Return them to their original location in the vehicle. For more information, refer to *Removing the Spare Tire and Tools on page 405* for more information.

## Spare Tire

Your vehicle, when new, had a fully-inflated spare tire. A spare tire may lose air over time, so check its inflation pressure regularly. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296* for information regarding proper tire inflation and loading your vehicle. For instruction on how to remove, install or store a spare tire, see *Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire on page 408* and *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 418*.

Your vehicle may have a different size spare tire than the road tires originally installed on your vehicle. This spare tire was developed for use on your vehicle, so it is all right to drive on it. If your vehicle has four-wheel drive and the different size spare tire is installed, keep the vehicle in two-wheel drive.

**Notice:** If your vehicle has four-wheel drive and the different size spare tire is installed on your vehicle, do not drive in four-wheel drive until you can have your flat tire repaired and/or replaced. You could damage your vehicle, and the repair costs would not be covered by your warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when the different size spare tire is installed on your vehicle.

After installing the spare tire on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare tire is correctly inflated. Have the damaged or flat road tire repaired or replaced as soon as you can and installed back onto your vehicle. This way, the spare tire will be available in case you need it again.

Do not mix tires and wheels of different sizes, because they will not fit. Keep your spare tire and its wheel together. If your vehicle has a spare tire that does not match your vehicle's original road tires and wheels in size and type, do not include the spare in the tire rotation.

## Appearance Care

### Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle

Your vehicle's interior will continue to look its best if it is cleaned often. Although not always visible, dust and dirt can accumulate on your upholstery. Dirt can damage carpet, fabric, leather, and plastic surfaces. Regular vacuuming is recommended to remove particles from your upholstery. It is important to keep your upholstery from becoming and remaining heavily soiled. Soils should be removed as quickly as possible. Your vehicle's interior may experience extremes of heat that could cause stains to set rapidly.

Lighter colored interiors may require more frequent cleaning. Use care because newspapers and garments that transfer color to your home furnishings may also transfer color to your vehicle's interior.

When cleaning your vehicle's interior, only use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned. Permanent damage may result from using cleaners on surfaces for which they were not intended. Use glass cleaner only on glass. Remove any accidental over-spray from other surfaces immediately. To prevent over-spray, apply cleaner directly to the cleaning cloth.

***Notice:*** If you use abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on your vehicle, you could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger. When cleaning the glass on your vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.

Many cleaners contain solvents that may become concentrated in your vehicle's breathing space. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning your vehicle's interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening your vehicle's doors and windows.

Dust may be removed from small buttons and knobs using a small brush with soft bristles.

Your GM dealer has a product for cleaning your vehicle's glass. Should it become necessary, you can also obtain a product from your GM dealer to remove odors from your vehicle's upholstery.

Do not clean your vehicle using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a knife or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a stiff brush. It can cause damage to your vehicle's interior surfaces.
- Never apply heavy pressure or rub aggressively with a cleaning cloth. Use of heavy pressure can damage your interior and does not improve the effectiveness of soil removal.
- Use only mild, neutral-pH soaps. Avoid laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. Using too much soap will leave a residue that leaves streaks and attracts dirt. For liquid cleaners, about 20 drops per gallon (3.78 L) of water is a good guide.

- Do not heavily saturate your upholstery while cleaning.
- Damage to your vehicle's interior may result from the use of many organic solvents such as naphtha, alcohol, etc.

## **Fabric/Carpet**

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment frequently to remove dust and loose dirt. A canister vacuum with a beater bar in the nozzle may only be used on floor carpet and carpeted floor mats. For soils, always try to remove them first with plain water or club soda. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- For liquids: gently blot the remaining soil with a paper towel. Allow the soil to absorb into the paper towel until no more can be removed.
- For solid dry soils: remove as much as possible and then vacuum.



To clean, use the following instructions:

1. Saturate a lint-free, clean white cloth with water or club soda.
2. Wring the cloth to remove excess moisture.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
4. Continue to gently rub the soiled area until the cleaning cloth remains clean.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution and repeat the cleaning process that was used with plain water.

If any of the soil remains, a commercial fabric cleaner or spot lifter may be necessary. When a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter is to be used, test a small hidden area for colorfastness first. If the locally cleaned area gives any impression that a ring formation may result, clean the entire surface.

After the cleaning process has been completed, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture from the fabric or carpet.

## Leather

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used. Allow the leather to dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry. Never use steam to clean leather. Never use spot lifters or spot removers on leather. Many commercial leather cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect leather may permanently change the appearance and feel of your leather and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean your vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner. Never use shoe polish on your leather.

## Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a clean soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used to gently remove dust and dirt. Never use spot lifters or removers on plastic surfaces. Many commercial cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect soft plastic surfaces may permanently change the appearance and feel of your interior and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean your vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Some commercial products may increase gloss on your instrument panel. The increase in gloss may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

## Wood Panels

Use a clean cloth moistened in warm, soapy water (use mild dish washing soap). Dry the wood immediately with a clean cloth.

## Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.



### **CAUTION:**

**Do not bleach or dye safety belts. If you do, it may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.**

## Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 460*.

## Washing Your Vehicle

The paint finish on the vehicle provides beauty, depth of color, gloss retention, and durability.

The best way to preserve the vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often with lukewarm or cold water.

Do not wash the vehicle in the direct rays of the sun. Use a car washing soap. Do not use strong soaps or chemical detergents. Be sure to rinse the vehicle well, removing all soap residue completely. GM-approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 433*. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based, or that contain acid or abrasives. All cleaning agents should be flushed promptly and not allowed to dry on the surface, or they could stain. Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle.

## Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under *Washing Your Vehicle* on page 427.

## Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of your vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. You can get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials* on page 433.

If your vehicle has a “basecoat/clearcoat” paint finish, the clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

**Notice:** Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on your vehicle.

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage your vehicle’s finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. You can help to keep the paint finish looking new by keeping your vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

## **Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts**

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, you may use chrome polish on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

## **Windshield and Wiper Blades**

If the windshield is not clear after using the windshield washer, or if the wiper blade chatters when running, wax, sap, or other material may be on the blade or windshield.

Clean the outside of the windshield with a glass cleaning liquid or powder and water solution. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when it is rinsed with water.

Grime from the windshield will stick to the wiper blades and affect their performance. Clean the blade by wiping vigorously with a cloth soaked in full-strength windshield washer solvent. Then rinse the blade with water.

Check the wiper blades and clean them as necessary; replace blades that look worn.

## Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels

Your vehicle may have either aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

**Notice:** If you use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, you could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Use only GM-approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of your vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because you could damage the surface. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

**Notice:** Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

**Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.**

Use chrome polish only on chrome-plated wheels, but avoid any painted surface of the wheel, and buff off immediately after application.

**Notice:** If you drive your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, you could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Never drive a vehicle equipped with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.

Do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes. These brushes can also damage the surface of these wheels.

## Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

**Notice:** Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on your vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on your vehicle.

## Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the warranty.

## Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your GM dealer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your GM dealer's body and paint shop.

## Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this for you.

## Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, GM will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.



## Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

Description	Usage
Polishing Cloth Wax-Treated	Interior and exterior polishing cloth.
Tar and Road Oil Remover	Removes tar, road oil, and asphalt.
Chrome Cleaner and Polish	Use on chrome or stainless steel.
White Sidewall Tire Cleaner	Removes soil and black marks from whitewalls.
Vinyl Cleaner	Cleans vinyl.
Glass Cleaner	Removes dirt, grime, smoke and fingerprints.
Chrome and Wire Wheel Cleaner	Removes dirt and grime from chrome wheels and wire wheel covers.
Finish Enhancer	Removes dust, fingerprints, and surface contaminants. Spray on and wipe off.

Description	Usage
Swirl Remover Polish	Removes swirl marks, fine scratches, and other light surface contamination.
Cleaner Wax	Removes light scratches and protects finish.
Foaming Tire Shine Low Gloss	Cleans, shines, and protects in one step. No wiping necessary.
Wash Wax Concentrate	Medium foaming shampoo. Cleans and lightly waxes. Biodegradable and phosphate free.
Spot Lifter	Quickly removes spots and stains from carpets, vinyl, and cloth upholstery.
Odor Eliminator	Odorless spray odor eliminator used on fabrics, vinyl, leather and carpet.

## Vehicle Identification

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



This is the legal identifier for your vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver's side. You can see it if you look through the windshield from outside your vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Certification/Tire and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

### Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code will help you identify your vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts.

### Service Parts Identification Label

You will find this label on the inside of the glove box. It is very helpful if you ever need to order parts. On this label, you will find the following:

- VIN
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

## Electrical System

### Add-On Electrical Equipment

**Notice:** Do not add anything electrical to your vehicle unless you check with your dealer first. Some electrical equipment can damage your vehicle and the damage would not be covered by your warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.

Add-on equipment can drain your vehicle's battery, even if your vehicle is not operating.

Your vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to your vehicle, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* on page 78.

## Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by an internal circuit breaker and a fuse. If the motor overheats due to heavy snow, etc., the wiper will stop until the motor cools. If the overload is caused by some electrical problem and not snow, etc., be sure to get it fixed.

## Power Windows and Other Power Options

Circuit breakers protect the power windows and other power accessories. When the current load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed or goes away.

## Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses, circuit breakers and fusible thermal links. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If you ever have a problem on the road and don't have a spare fuse, you can borrow one that has the same amperage. Just pick some feature of your vehicle that you can get along without — like the radio or cigarette lighter — and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

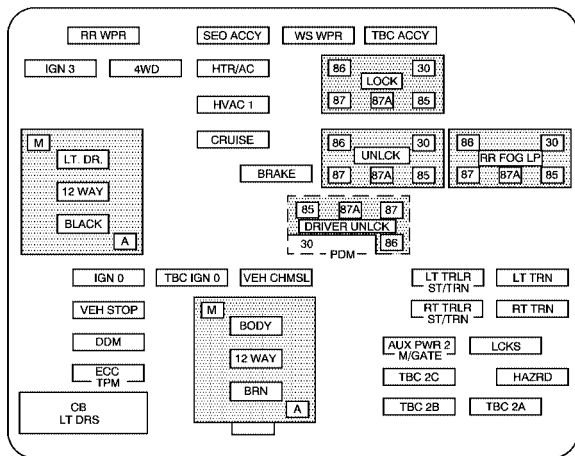
## Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The fuse block access door is on the driver's side edge of the instrument panel. Pull off the cover to access the fuse block.

To remove fuses, hold the end of the fuse between your thumb and index finger and pull straight out.

You may have spare fuses located behind the fuse block access door. These can be used to replace a bad fuse. However, make sure it is of the correct amperage.



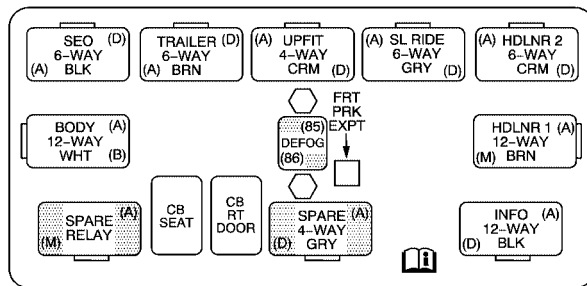
Fuses	Usage
RR WPR	Not Used
SEO ACCY	Special Equipment Option Accessory
WS WPR	Windshield Wipers
TBC ACCY	Truck Body Controller Accessory
IGN 3	Ignition, Heated Seats

Fuses	Usage
4WD	Four-Wheel Drive System, Auxiliary Battery
HTR/AC	Climate Control System
LCK (Relay)	Power Door Lock Relay (Lock Function)
HVAC 1	Climate Control System
LT DR	Driver's Door Harness Connection
CRUISE	Cruise Control, Power Take Off (PTO)
UNLCK (Relay)	Power Door Lock Relay (Unlock Function)
RR FOG LP	Not Used
BRAKE	Anti-Lock Brake System
DRIVER UNLCK	Power Door Lock Relay (Driver's Door Unlock Function)
IGN 0	TCM
TBC IGN 0	Truck Body Controller
VEH CHMSL	Vehicle and Trailer High Mounted Stoplamp
LT TRLR ST/TRN	Left Turn Signal/Stop Trailer

Fuses	Usage
LT TRN	Left Turn Signals and Sidemarkers
VEH STOP	Vehicle Stoplamps, Brake Module, Electronic Throttle Control Module
RT TRLR ST/TRN	Right Turn Signal/Stop Trailer
RT TRN	Right Turn Signals and Sidemarkers
BODY	Harness Connector
DDM	Driver Door Module
AUX PWR 2, M/GATE	Not Used
LCKS	Power Door Lock System
ECC, TPM	Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)
TBC 2C	Truck Body Controller
HAZRD	Flasher Module
CB LT DRS	Left Power Windows Circuit Breaker
TBC 2B	Truck Body Controller
TBC 2A	Truck Body Controller

## Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block

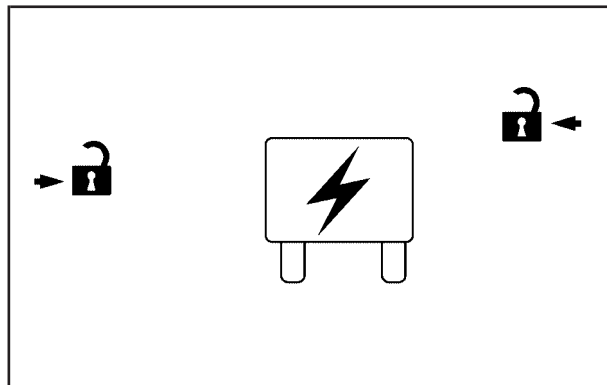
The center instrument panel fuse block is located underneath the instrument panel, to the left of the steering column.



Device	Usage
SEO	Special Equipment Option
TRAILER	Trailer Brake Wiring
UPFIT	Upfitter (Not Used)
SL RIDE	Ride Control Harness Connection
HDLR 2	Headliner Wiring Connector

Device	Usage
BODY	Body Wiring Connector
DEFOG	Rear Defogger Relay
HDLNR 1	Headliner Wiring Connector 1
SPARE RELAY	Not Used
CB SEAT	Driver and Passenger Seat Module Circuit Breaker
CB RT DOOR	Right Power Windows Circuit Breaker
SPARE	Not Used
INFO	Infotainment Harness Connection

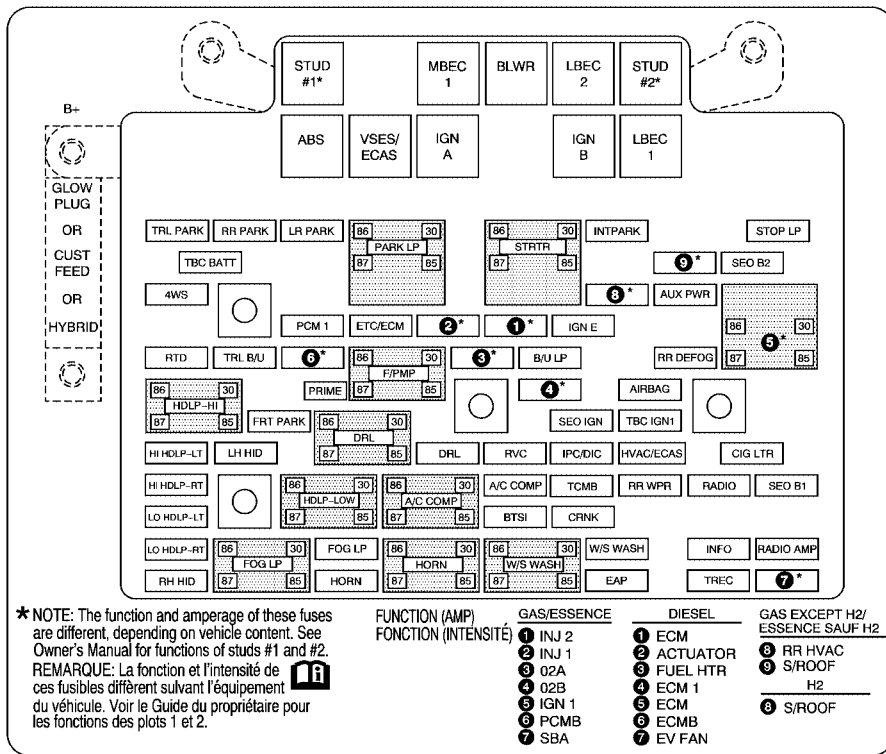
## Underhood Fuse Block



The underhood fuse block in the engine compartment on the driver's side of the vehicle near the battery. Lift the cover for access to the fuse/relay block.

To remove fuses hold the end of the fuse between your thumb and index finger and pull straight out.

See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 334 for more information on its location.





- \*1 — Gasoline Engine and Fuel Injection Rail #2.
- \*2 — Gasoline Engine and Fuel Injection Rail #1.
- \*3 — Gasoline Engine; Oxygen Sensors.
- \*4 — Gasoline Engine; Oxygen Sensors.
- \*5 — Ignition 1.
- \*6 — Powertrain Control Module, Fuel Pump.
- \*7 — Supplemental Brake Assist.
- \*8 — Rear Climate Control.
- \*9 — Sunroof.

Fuses	Usage
GLOW PLUG	Not Used
CUST FEED	Gasoline Accessory Power
HYBRID	Not Used
STUD #1	Auxiliary Power (Single Battery and Diesels Only)/ Dual Battery (TP2) Do not install fuse.
MBEC	Mid-Bussed Electrical Center Power Feed, Front Seats, Right Doors
BLWR	Front Climate Control Fan

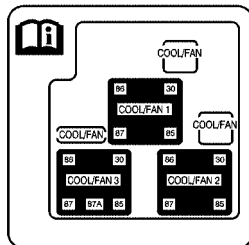
Fuses	Usage
LBEC	Left Bussed Electrical Center, Door Modules, Door Locks, Auxiliary Power Outlet—Rear Cargo Area and Instrument Panel
STUD #2*	Accessory Power/Trailer Wiring Brake Feed
ABS	Anti-lock Brakes
VSES/ECAS	Vehicle Stability
IGN A	Ignition Power
IGN B	Ignition Power
LBEC 1	Left Bussed Electrical Center, Left Doors, Truck Body Controller, Flasher Module
TRL PARK	Parking Lamps Trailer Wiring
RR PARK	Right Rear Parking and Sidemarkers Lamps
LR PARK	Left Rear Parking and Sidemarkers Lamps
PARK LP	Parking Lamps Relay
STRTR	Starter Relay
INTPARK	Interior Lamps
STOP LP	Stoplamps
TBC BATT	Truck Body Controller Battery Feed
SEO B2	Off-Road Lamps

Fuses	Usage
4WS	Not Used
AUX PWR	Accessory Power Outlet — Console
PCM 1	Powertrain Control Module
ETC/ECM	Electronic Throttle Control, Electronic Brake Controller
IGN E	Instrument Panel Cluster, Air Conditioning Relay, Turn Signal/Hazard Switch, Starter Relay
RTD	Ride Control
TRL B/U	Backup Lamps Trailer Wiring
F/PMP	Fuel Pump (Relay)
B/U LP	Back-up Lamps, Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System
RR DEFOG	Rear Window Defogger
HDLP-HI	Headlamp High Beam Relay
PRIME	Not Used
AIRBAG	Supplemental Inflatable Restraint System
FRT PARK	Front Parking Lamps, Sidemarkers Lamps
DRL	Daytime Running Lamps (Relay)
SEO IGN	Rear Defog Relay

Fuses	Usage
TBC IGN1	Truck Body Controller Ignition
HI HDLP-LT	High Beam Headlamp-Left
LH HID	Not Used
DRL	Daytime Running Lamps
RVC	Regulated Voltage Control
IPC/DIC	Instrument Panel Cluster/Driver Information Center
HVAC/ECAS	Climate Control Controller
CIG LTR	Cigarette Lighter
HI HDLP-RT	High Beam Headlamp-Right
HDLP-LOW	Headlamp Low Beam Relay
A/C COMP	Air Conditioning Compressor Relay
A/C COMP	Air Conditioning Compressor
TCMB	Transmission Control Module
RR WPR	Not Used
RADIO	Audio System
SEO B1	Mid Bussed Electrical Center, Rear Heated Seats, Universal Home Remote System
LO HDLP-LT	Headlamp Low Beam-Left
BTSI	Brake Transmission Shift Interlock System

Fuses	Usage
CRNK	Starting System
LO HDLP-RT	Headlamp Low Beam-Right
FOG LP	Fog Lamps Relay
FOG LP	Fog Lamps
HORN	Horn Relay
W/S WASH	Windshield Washer Pump Relay
W/S WASH	Windshield Washer Pump
INFO	OnStar®/Rear Seat Entertainment
RADIO AMP	Radio Amplifier
RH HID	Not Used
HORN	Horn
EAP	Not Used
TREC	All-Wheel Drive Module
SBA	Supplemental Brake Assist

## Auxiliary Electric Cooling Fan Fuse Block



The auxiliary electric cooling fan fuse block is located in the engine compartment on the driver's side of the vehicle next to the underhood fuse block.

Lift the cover for access to the fuse/relay block.

Fuses	Usage
COOL/FAN	Cooling Fan
COOL/FAN	Cooling Fan Relay Fuse
COOL/FAN	Cooling Fan Fuse

Relays	Usage
COOL/FAN 1	Cooling Fan Relay 1
COOL/FAN 3	Cooling Fan Relay 3
COOL/FAN 2	Cooling Fan Relay 2

## Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in English and metric conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 460.

### Capacities and Specifications

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Air Conditioning Refrigerant R134a	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant caution label located under the hood. See your dealer for more information.	
Cooling System		
Engine Driven Fan	16.2 quarts	15.3 L
Electric Engine Cooling Fan	16.6 quarts	15.7 L
Engine Oil with Filter	6.0 quarts	5.7 L
Fuel Tank	26.0 gallons	98.4 L
Transmission Fluid	5.0 qt	4.7 L
Transfer Case Fluid	2.0 qt	1.9 L
Wheel Nut Torque	140 ft lb	190 N•m
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

### Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
VORTEC™ 6000	N	Automatic	0.040 inches (1.01 mm)

## Section 6 Maintenance Schedule

---

<b>Maintenance Schedule</b> .....	446	At Each Fuel Fill .....	456
Introduction .....	446	At Least Once a Month .....	457
Maintenance Requirements .....	446	At Least Once a Year .....	457
Your Vehicle and the Environment .....	447	Recommended Fluids and Lubricants .....	460
Using the Maintenance Schedule .....	447	Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts .....	462
Scheduled Maintenance .....	449	Engine Drive Belt Routing .....	463
Additional Required Services .....	452	Maintenance Record .....	464
Maintenance Footnotes .....	453		
Owner Checks and Services .....	456		

## Maintenance Schedule

### Introduction

**Important:** Keep engine oil at the proper level and change as recommended.



*Have you purchased the GM Protection Plan? The Plan supplements your new vehicle warranties. See your Warranty and Owner Assistance booklet or your dealer for details.*

## Maintenance Requirements

**Notice:** Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, replacement parts, and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep your vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance may not be covered by warranty.

## **Your Vehicle and the Environment**

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep your vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance is important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from your vehicle. To help protect our environment, and to keep your vehicle in good condition, be sure to maintain your vehicle properly.

## **Using the Maintenance Schedule**

We at General Motors want to help you keep your vehicle in good working condition. But we do not know exactly how you will drive it. You may drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you may drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You may use your vehicle in making deliveries. Or you may drive it to work, to do errands, or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You may need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep your vehicle in good condition, see your GM Goodwrench<sup>®</sup> dealer.

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits. You will find these limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 296*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- are driven off-road in the recommended manner. See *Off-Road Driving on page 265*.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 326*.

The services in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 449* should be performed when indicated. See *Additional Required Services on page 452* and *Maintenance Footnotes on page 453* for further information.

 **CAUTION:**

**Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, see your GM Goodwrench® dealer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 325*.**

Some maintenance services can be complex. So, unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, you should have your GM Goodwrench® dealer do these jobs.

When you go to your GM Goodwrench® dealer for your service needs, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM parts.



If you want to purchase service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 487*.

*Owner Checks and Services on page 456* tells you what should be checked, when to check it, and what you can easily do to help keep your vehicle in good condition.

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 460* and *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 462*. When your vehicle is serviced, make sure these are used. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle. We recommend the use of genuine GM parts.

## Scheduled Maintenance

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on, it means that service is required for your vehicle. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate that vehicle service is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your GM Goodwrench<sup>®</sup> dealer has GM-trained service technicians who will perform this work using genuine GM parts and reset the system.

If the engine oil life system is ever reset accidentally, you must service your vehicle within 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last service. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 339* for information on the Engine Oil Life System and resetting the system.

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message appears, certain services, checks, and inspections are required. Required services are described in the following for “Maintenance I” and “Maintenance II.” Generally, it is recommended that your first service be Maintenance I, your second service be Maintenance II, and that you alternate Maintenance I and Maintenance II thereafter. However, in some cases, Maintenance II may be required more often.

**Maintenance I** — Use Maintenance I if the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on within 10 months since the vehicle was purchased or Maintenance II was performed.

**Maintenance II** — Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I. Always use Maintenance II whenever the message comes on 10 months or more since the last service or if the message has not come on at all for one year.

## Scheduled Maintenance

Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
Change engine oil and filter. See <i>Engine Oil on page 336</i> . Reset oil life system. See <i>Engine Oil Life System on page 339</i> . An <i>Emission Control Service</i> .	•	•
Lubricate chassis components. See <i>footnote #</i> .	•	•
Visually check for any leaks or damage. See <i>footnote (j)</i> .	•	•
Inspect engine air cleaner filter or change indicator (if equipped). If necessary, replace filter. See <i>Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 341</i> . See <i>footnote (k)</i> .		•
Rotate tires and check inflation pressures and wear. See <i>Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 394</i> and “Tire Wear Inspection” in <i>At Least Once a Month on page 457</i> .	•	•
Inspect brake system. See <i>footnote (a)</i> .	•	•
Check engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.	•	•
Perform any needed additional services. See <i>Additional Required Services on page 452</i> .	•	•
Inspect suspension and steering components. See <i>footnote (b)</i> .		•
Inspect engine cooling system. See <i>footnote (c)</i> .		•
Inspect wiper blades. See <i>footnote (d)</i> .		•
Inspect restraint system components. See <i>footnote (e)</i> .		•
Lubricate body components. See <i>footnote (f)</i> .		•
Check transmission fluid level and add fluid as needed.		•
Check transfer case fluid level and add fluid as needed.		•

## Additional Required Services

The following services should be performed at the first maintenance service (I or II) after the indicated miles (kilometers) shown for each item.

### Additional Required Services

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system for loose or damaged components.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Vehicles without a filter restriction indicator: Replace engine air cleaner filter. See <i>Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 341</i> .		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (severe service). See <i>footnote (h)</i> .		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (normal service).				•		
Change transfer case fluid. See <i>footnote (m)</i> .		•		•		•
Inspect evaporative control system. An <i>Emission Control Service</i> . See <i>footnotes † and (g)</i> .		•		•		•

### Additional Required Services (cont'd)

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Replace spark plugs and inspect spark plug wires. <i>An Emission Control Service.</i>				•		
Engine cooling system service (or every five years, whichever occurs first). <i>An Emission Control Service. See footnote (i).</i>						•
Inspect engine accessory drive belt. <i>An Emission Control Service. See footnote (l).</i>						•

### Maintenance Footnotes

† *The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency or the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. We, however, urge that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals and the maintenance be recorded.*

# *Lubricate the front suspension, steering linkage, transmission shift linkage, and parking brake cable guides. Control arm ball joints require lubrication but should not be lubricated unless their temperature is 10°F (-12°C) or higher, or they could be damaged.*

(a) *Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect other brake parts, including calipers, parking brake, etc.*

(b) *Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts, signs of wear, or lack of lubrication. Inspect power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Visually check constant velocity joints, rubber boots, and axle seals for leaks.*

(c) *Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings, and clamps; replace with genuine GM parts as needed. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended at least once a year.*

(d) *Visually inspect wiper blades for wear or cracking. Replace wiper blades that appear worn or damaged or that streak or miss areas of the windshield.*

(e) *Make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced. Also look for any opened or broken airbag coverings, and have them repaired or replaced. The airbag system does not need regular maintenance.*

(f) *Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood latch assembly, secondary latch, pivots, spring anchor, release pawl, door hinges, liftgate hinge, liftgate linkage, liftgate handle pivot points, latch bolt, fuel door hinge, locks, and folding seat hardware. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.*

(g) *Inspect system. Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing, and condition. Check that the purge valve works properly, if equipped. Replace as needed.*

*(h) Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service.*

*(i) Drain, flush, and refill cooling system. This service can be complex; you should have your dealer perform this service. See Engine Coolant on page 347 for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap, and filler neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap.*

*(j) A fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.*

*(k) If you drive regularly under dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.*

*(l) Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.*

*(m) Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation.*

## Owner Checks and Services

These owner checks and services should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure the safety, dependability, and emission control performance of your vehicle. Your GM Goodwrench® dealer can assist you with these checks and services.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to your vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 460*.

### At Each Fuel Fill

*It is important to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.*

### Engine Oil Level Check

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 336* for further details.

**Notice:** It is important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level. Failure to keep your engine oil at the proper level can cause damage to your engine not covered by your warranty.

### Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 347* for further details.

### Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer fluid reservoir and add the proper fluid if necessary.



## At Least Once a Month

### Tire Inflation Check

Visually inspect your vehicle's tires and make sure they are inflated to the correct pressures. Do not forget to check the spare tire. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 393*. Check to make sure the spare tire is stored securely. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 404*.

### Tire Wear Inspection

Tire rotation may be required for high mileage highway drivers prior to the Engine Oil Life System service notification. Check the tires for wear and, if necessary, rotate the tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 394*.

## At Least Once a Year

### Starter Switch Check

#### CAUTION:

**When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.**

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 109*. Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer for service.

## Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System Check

### CAUTION:

**When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.**

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 109*.  
Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition to RUN, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of PARK (P) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of PARK (P), contact your GM Goodwrench<sup>®</sup> dealer for service.

## Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK in each shift lever position.

- The ignition should turn to LOCK only when the shift lever is in PARK (P).
- The ignition key should come out only in LOCK.

Contact your GM Goodwrench<sup>®</sup> dealer if service is required.

## Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission Park (P) Mechanism Check

### CAUTION:

**When you are doing this check, your vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of your vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.**

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and transmission in NEUTRAL (N), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the PARK (P) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to PARK (P). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your GM Goodwrench<sup>®</sup> dealer if service is required.

### Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

## Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number, or specification may be obtained from your dealer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	Engine oil which meets GM Standard GM6094M and displays the American Petroleum Institute Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. GM Goodwrench <sup>®</sup> oil meets all the requirements for your vehicle. To determine the proper viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see <i>Engine Oil on page 336</i> .
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL <sup>®</sup> Coolant. See <i>Engine Coolant on page 347</i> .
Hydraulic Brake System	Delco <sup>®</sup> Supreme 11 Brake Fluid or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Windshield Washer	GM Optikleen <sup>®</sup> Washer Solvent.
Power Steering System	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON <sup>®</sup> -VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Floor Shift Linkage	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. U.S. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2 Category LB or GC-LB.
Chassis Lubrication	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.

<b>Usage</b>	<b>Fluid/Lubricant</b>
Front and Rear Axle	SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12378261, in Canada 10953455) meeting GM Specification 9986115.
Transfer Case	Manual Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 88861800, in Canada 88861801).
Front Axle Propshaft Spline	Spline Lubricant, Special Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12345879, in Canada 10953511) or lubricant meeting requirements of GM 9985830.
Hood Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Body Door Hinge Pins, Tailgate Hinge and Linkage, Folding Seats, and Fuel Door Hinge	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).

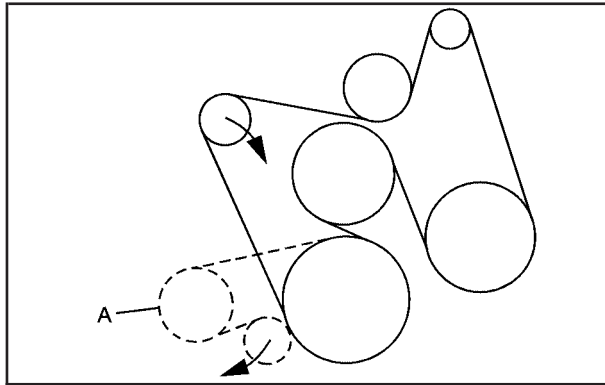
<b>Usage</b>	<b>Fluid/Lubricant</b>
Tailgate Handle Pivot Points, Hinges, Latch Bolt, and Linkage	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887).
Weatherstrip Squeaks	Synthetic Grease with Teflon, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12371287, in Canada 10953437).

## Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts listed below by name, part number or specification can be obtained from your GM dealer.

<b>Part</b>	<b>GM Part Number</b>	<b>ACDelco® Part Number</b>
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	25313349	A1518C
Oil Filter	89017524	PF48
Spark Plugs	12571164	41-985
Windshield Wiper Blades 22.0 inches (56.0 cm)	15153642	—

## Engine Drive Belt Routing



(A) Air Conditioning Compressor

## Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. See *Maintenance Requirements on page 446*. Any additional information from *Owner Checks and Services on page 456* can be added on the following record pages. You should retain all maintenance receipts.

### Maintenance Record

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed



### Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

### Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

## Section 7 Customer Assistance Information

---

<b>Customer Assistance and Information</b> .....	468	<b>Reporting Safety Defects</b> .....	486
Customer Satisfaction Procedure .....	468	Reporting Safety Defects to the	
Online Owner Center .....	471	United States Government .....	486
Customer Assistance for Text		Reporting Safety Defects to the	
Telephone (TTY) Users .....	472	Canadian Government .....	486
Customer Assistance Offices .....	472	Reporting Safety Defects to	
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program .....	473	General Motors .....	486
Roadside Assistance Program .....	474	Service Publications Ordering	
Courtesy Transportation .....	477	Information .....	487
Vehicle Data Collection and Event			
Data Recorders .....	480		
Collision Damage Repair .....	481		

# Customer Assistance and Information

## Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to GMC. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

**STEP ONE:** Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

**STEP TWO:** If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, in the U.S., contact the GMC Consumer Relations Manager by calling 1-800-GMC-8782 (1-800-462-8782, Customer Assistance prompt). In Canada, contact General Motors of Canada Customer Communication by calling 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French).

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Please have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting GMC, please remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest you follow Step One first if you have a concern.

**STEP THREE — U.S. Owners:** Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you should file with the BBB Auto Line Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filling out a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program  
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.  
4200 Wilson Boulevard  
Suite 800  
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

**STEP THREE — Canadian Owners:** In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in steps 1 and 2, General Motors of Canada Limited wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge Mediation/Arbitration Program. General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in approximately 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685. Alternatively, you may call the General Motors Customer Communication Centre, 1-800-263-3777 (English), 1-800-263-7854 (French), or you may write to the Mediation/Arbitration Program, c/o Customer Communication Centre, General Motors of Canada Limited, Mail Code: CA1-163-005, 1908 Colonel Sam Drive, Oshawa, Ontario, L1H 8P7. Your inquiry should be accompanied by your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

## Online Owner Center

### Online Owner Center (United States only)

The Owner Center is a resource for your GM ownership needs. Specific vehicle information can be found in one place.

#### **The Online Owner Center allows you to:**

- Get e-mail service reminders.
- Access information about your specific vehicle, including tips and videos and an electronic version of this owner manual.
- Keep track of your vehicle's service history and maintenance schedule.
- Find GM dealers for service nationwide.
- Receive special promotions and privileges only available to members.

Refer to [www.MyGMLink.com](http://www.MyGMLink.com) on the web for updated information and to register your vehicle.

## My GM Canada (Canada only)

My GM Canada is a password-protected section of [gmcanada.com](http://gmcanada.com) where you can save information on GM vehicles, get personalized offers, and use handy tools and forms with greater ease.

Here are a few of the valuable tools and services you will have access to:

- My Showroom: Find and save information on vehicles and current offers in your area.
- My Dealers/Retailers: Save details such as address and phone number for each of your preferred GM Dealers or Retailers.
- My Driveway: Receive service reminders and helpful advice on owning and maintaining your vehicle.
- My Preferences: Manage your profile, subscribe to E-News and use tools and forms with greater ease.

To sign up to My GM Canada, visit the My GM Canada section within [www.gmcanada.com](http://www.gmcanada.com).

## Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use the Text Telephones (TTYs), GMC has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center.

Any TTY user can communicate with GMC by dialing: 1-800-GMC-8583 (462-8583).  
(TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.)

## Customer Assistance Offices

GMC encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail GMC, the letter should be addressed to:

### United States

GMC Customer Assistance Center  
P.O. Box 33172  
Detroit, MI 48232-5172

[www.GMC.com](http://www.GMC.com)  
1-800-GMC-8782 (462-8782)  
1-800-GMC-8583 (462-8583)  
(For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))

Roadside Assistance: 1-800-GMC-8782  
(462-8782)

Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From Puerto Rico

1-800-496-9992 (English)

1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)

Fax Number: 313-381-0022

U.S. Virgin Islands:

1-800-496-9994

Fax Number: 313-381-0022

### Canada

General Motors of Canada Limited  
Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005  
1908 Colonel Sam Drive  
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

[www.gmcanada.com](http://www.gmcanada.com)

1-800-263-3777 (English)

1-800-263-7854 (French)

1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone  
devices (TTYs))

Roadside Assistance: 1-800-268-6800



## All Overseas Locations

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

### **Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands)**

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.  
Customer Assistance Center  
Paseo de la Reforma # 2740  
Col. Lomas de Bezares  
C.P. 11910, Mexico, D.F.  
01-800-508-0000  
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0 800

## GM Mobility Reimbursement Program



This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to \$1,000 of the cost of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for your vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift.

The offer is available for a very limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease. For more details, or to determine your vehicle's eligibility, visit [gmmobility.com](http://gmmobility.com) or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details. TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

## Roadside Assistance Program

In the U.S. call, **1-800-GMC-8782**  
**(1-800-462-8782)**

In Canada, call **1-800-268-6800**

Service available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year

As the owner of a new GMC vehicle, you are automatically enrolled in the GMC Roadside Assistance program. This value-added service is intended to provide you with peace of mind as you drive in the city or travel the open road.

### Who is Covered?

Roadside Assistance coverage is for the vehicle operator, regardless of ownership. A person driving this vehicle without the consent of the owner is not eligible for coverage.

The following services are provided in the U.S. during the Bumper-to-Bumper warranty period and, in Canada, during the Base Warranty coverage period of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, up to a maximum coverage of \$100.

- **Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the customer to get to the nearest service station (approximately \$5 in the U.S. and 10 litres in Canada). Service to provide diesel may be restricted. For safety reasons, propane and other alternative fuels will not be provided through this service.
- **Lock-out Service:** To ensure security, the driver must present the vehicle registration and personal ID before lock-out service is provided. Lock-out service will be covered at no charge if you are unable to gain entry into your vehicle. If your vehicle will not start, Roadside Assistance will arrange to have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealership. In the U.S., replacement keys made at the customer's expense will be covered within 10 miles (16 km).

- **Emergency Tow From a Public Roadway or Highway:** Tow to the nearest dealership for warranty service or in the event of a vehicle-disabling accident. Winch-out assistance when the vehicle is mired in sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Installation of your spare tire in good condition will be covered at no charge. The customer is responsible for the repair or replacement of the tire if not covered by a warrantable failure.
- **Jump Start:** No-start occurrences which require a battery jump start will be covered at no charge.
- **Dealer Locator Service:** Information on the dealer nearest your location.
- **Trip Routing:** Your Roadside Assistance Representative can provide you with specific information regarding this feature.
- **Trip Interruption Expense Benefits:** Your Roadside Assistance Representative can provide you with specific information regarding this feature.

## Additional Services for Canadian Customers

- **Trip Routing Service:** Upon Request, Roadside Assistance will send you detailed, computer-personalized maps, highlighting your choice of either the most direct route or the most scenic route to your destination, anywhere in North America, along with any helpful travel information we may have pertaining to your trip. To request this service, please call us toll-free at 1-800-268-6800.

We'll make every attempt to send your personalized trip routing as quickly as possible, but it's best to allow three weeks before your planned departure date. Trip routing requests will be limited to six per calendar year.

- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:**

In the event of a warranty related vehicle disablement, while en route and over 250 kilometres from original point of departure, you may qualify for trip interruption expense assistance. This assistance covers reasonable reimbursement of up to a maximum of \$500 (Canadian) for (A) meals (maximum of \$50/day), (B) lodging (maximum of \$100/night) and (C) alternate ground transportation (maximum of \$40/day). This benefit is to assist you with some of the unplanned expense you may incur while waiting for your vehicle to be repaired.

Pre-authorization, original detailed receipts and a copy of the repair order are required.

Once authorization has been given, your advisor will help you make any necessary arrangements and explain how to claim for trip interruption expense assistance.

- **Alternative Service:** There may be times, when Roadside Assistance cannot provide timely assistance, your advisor may authorize you to secure local emergency road service, and you will be reimbursed up to \$100 upon submission of the original receipt to Roadside Assistance.

In many instances, mechanical failures are covered under GMC's Bumper-to-Bumper warranty. However, when other services are utilized, our Roadside Assistance Representatives will explain any payment obligations you might incur.

For prompt and efficient assistance when calling, please provide the following to the Roadside Assistance Representative:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number.
- Telephone number of your location.
- Location of the vehicle.
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle.
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and delivery date of the vehicle.
- Description of the problem.

While we hope you never have the occasion to use our service, it is added security while traveling for you and your family. Remember, we are only a phone call away. U.S. customers call GMC Roadside Assistance: **1-800-462-8782**, text telephone (TTY) users, call **1-888-889-2438**. Canadian customers call **1-800-268-6800**.

GMC and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or reimbursement to an owner or driver when, in their sole discretion, the claims become excessive in frequency or type of occurrence.

Roadside Assistance is not part of or included in the coverage provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. GMC and General Motors of Canada reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

### **Towing and Road Service Exclusions**

Specifically excluded from Roadside Assistance coverage are towing or services for vehicles operated on a non-public roadway or highway, fines, impound towing caused by a violation of local, Municipal, State, Provincial, or Federal law, and mounting, dismounting or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.

## **Courtesy Transportation**

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for new vehicles.

For warranty repairs during the Bumper-to-Bumper (U.S.) or Base Warranty Coverage period (Canada), provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, interim transportation may be available under the Courtesy Transportation program. Several courtesy transportation options are available to assist in reducing your inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty and is available only at participating dealers. A separate booklet entitled "Warranty and Owner Assistance Information" furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

## **Scheduling Service Appointments**

When your vehicle requires warranty service, you should contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer requests that you simply drop the vehicle off for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for the same day repair.

## **Transportation Options**

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, GM helps to minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

### **Shuttle Service**

Shuttle service is the preferred means of offering Courtesy Transportation and participating dealers can provide you with shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters for the dealer's area.

### **Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement**

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, and public transportation is used as 'shuttle service,' the reimbursement is limited to the associated shuttle allowance and must be supported by original receipts.

In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts.

### **Courtesy Rental Vehicle**

Your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if your vehicle is kept for an overnight warranty repair. Rental reimbursement will be limited and must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

Generally it is not possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

### **Additional Program Information**

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact your dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

*General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.*

## Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle, like other modern motor vehicles, has a number of sophisticated computer systems that monitor and control several aspects of the vehicle's performance. Your vehicle uses on-board vehicle computers to monitor emission control components to optimize fuel economy, to monitor conditions for airbag deployment and, if the vehicle has the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), to provide anti-lock braking and to help the driver control the vehicle in difficult driving situations. Some information may be stored during regular operations to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions; other information is stored only in a crash event by computer systems, such as those commonly called Event Data Recorders (EDR).

In a crash event, computer systems, such as the airbag Sensing and Diagnostic Module (SDM) in your vehicle may record information about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated,

such as data related to engine speed, brake application, throttle position, vehicle speed, safety belt usage, airbag readiness, airbag performance, and the severity of a collision. This information has been used to improve vehicle crash performance and may be used to improve crash performance of future vehicles and driving safety. Unlike the data recorders on many airplanes, these on-board systems do not record sounds, such as conversation of vehicle occupants.

To read this information, special equipment is needed and access to the vehicle or the device that stores the data is required. GM will not access information about a crash event or share it with others other than:

- with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee,
- in response to an official request of police or similar government office,
- as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process, or
- as required by law.



In addition, once GM collects or receives data, GM may:

- use the data for GM research needs,
- make it available for research where appropriate confidentiality is to be maintained and need is shown, or
- share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with non-GM organizations for research purposes.

Others, such as law enforcement, may have access to the special equipment that can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the device that stores the data.

If your vehicle has OnStar<sup>®</sup>, please check the OnStar<sup>®</sup> subscription service agreement or manual for information on its operations and data collection.

## **Collision Damage Repair**

If your vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs will diminish your vehicle's resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

## **Collision Parts**

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which your vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are your best choice to assure that your vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain your GM New Vehicle Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior accidents. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part, may be an acceptable choice to maintain your vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance, however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for your vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts are not covered by that warranty.

## **Repair Facility**

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your GM dealer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state of the art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

## **Insuring Your Vehicle**

Protect your investment in your GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to your GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you assure your vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If your vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that assures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read your lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of your lease for poor quality repairs.

## If an Accident Occurs

Here is what to do if you are involved in an accident.

- Try to relax and then check to make sure you are all right. If you are uninjured, make sure that no one else in your vehicle, or the other vehicle, is injured.
- If there has been an injury, call 911 for help. Do not leave the scene of an accident until all matters have been taken care of. Move your vehicle only if its position puts you in danger or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.
- Give only the necessary and requested information to police and other parties involved in the accident. Do not discuss your personal condition, mental frame of mind, or anything unrelated to the accident. This will help guard against post-accident legal action.
- If you need roadside assistance, call GM Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 474* for more information.
- If your vehicle cannot be driven, know where the towing service will be taking it. Get a card from the tow truck operator or write down the driver's name, the service's name, and the phone number.
- Remove any valuables from your vehicle before it is towed away. Make sure this includes your insurance information and registration if you keep these items in your vehicle.

- Gather the important information you will need from the other driver. Things like name, address, phone number, driver's license number, vehicle license plate, vehicle make, model and model year, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), insurance company and policy number, and a general description of the damage to the other vehicle.
- If possible, call your insurance company from the scene of the accident. They will walk you through the information they will need. If they ask for a police report, phone or go to the police department headquarters the next day and you can get a copy of the report for a nominal fee. In some states/provinces with "no fault" insurance laws, a report may not be necessary. This is especially true if there are no injuries and both vehicles are driveable.
- Choose a reputable collision repair facility for your vehicle. Whether you select a GM dealer or a private collision repair facility to fix the damage, make sure you are comfortable with them. Remember, you will have to feel comfortable with their work for a long time.
- Once you have an estimate, read it carefully and make sure you understand what work will be performed on your vehicle. If you have a question, ask for an explanation. Reputable shops welcome this opportunity.

## **Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process**

In the event that your vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take your vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by your GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with your repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts.

Remember if your vehicle is leased you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as cost stays within reasonable limits.

## Reporting Safety Defects

### Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA  
400 Seventh Street, SW.  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should immediately notify Transport Canada, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. You may call them at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada  
Road Safety Branch  
2780 Sheffield Road  
Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9

### Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, we certainly hope you'll notify us. Please call us at 1-800-GMC-8782 (1-800-462-8782), or write:

GMC Customer Assistance Center  
P.O. Box 33172  
Detroit, MI 48232-5172

In Canada, please call us at 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French). Or, write:

General Motors of Canada Limited  
Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005  
1908 Colonel Sam Drive  
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

## **Service Publications Ordering Information**

### **Service Manuals**

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on engines, transmission, axle suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

### **Transmission, Transaxle, Transfer Case Unit Repair Manual**

This manual provides information on unit repair service procedures, adjustments, and specifications for GM transmissions, transaxles, and transfer cases.

## **Service Bulletins**

Service Bulletins give technical service information needed to knowledgeable service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

In Canada, the service bulletin reference number can be obtained by contacting your General Motors dealer or by calling 1-800-GM-DRIVE (1-800-463-7483). This reference number is needed to order the service bulletin from Helm, Inc.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: \$6.00 US + Processing Fee

## Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The owner manual will include the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: \$35.00 US +  
Processing Fee

Without Portfolio: Owner's Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: \$25.00 US +  
Processing Fee

## Current and Past Model Order Forms

Technical Service Bulletins and Manuals are available for current and past model GM vehicles. To request an order form, please specify year and model name of the vehicle.

## ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123 Monday-Friday 8:00 AM - 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only  
(VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. on  
the World Wide Web at: [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com)

Or you can write to:

Helm, Incorporated  
P.O. Box 07130  
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and  
without incurring obligation. Allow ample time  
for delivery.

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are  
quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are  
to make checks payable in U.S. funds.



## A

Accessories and Modifications .....	324	All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) System .....	259
Accessory Power Outlet(s) .....	158	Antenna, Fixed Mast .....	249
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	79	Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System .....	250
Additives, Fuel .....	327	Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) .....	257
Add-On Electrical Equipment .....	435	Anti-Lock Brake, System Warning Light .....	177
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine .....	341	Appearance Care	
Air Conditioning .....	160	Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels .....	430
Airbag		Care of Safety Belts .....	426
Passenger Status Indicator .....	172	Chemical Paint Spotting .....	432
Readiness Light .....	171	Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses .....	428
Airbag Sensing and Diagnostic Module (SDM) .....	480	Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle .....	423
Airbag System .....	64	Fabric/Carpet .....	424
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	79	Finish Care .....	428
How Does an Airbag Restrain? .....	71	Finish Damage .....	431
Passenger Sensing System .....	73	Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces .....	426
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	78	Leather .....	425
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? .....	70	Sheet Metal Damage .....	431
What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? .....	71	Tires .....	431
When Should an Airbag Inflate? .....	69	Underbody Maintenance .....	432
Where Are the Airbags? .....	67	Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials .....	433
All-Wheel Drive .....	372	Washing Your Vehicle .....	427
		Weatherstrips .....	427
		Windshield and Wiper Blades .....	429
		Wood Panels .....	426

Ashtray(s) .....	159
Audio System(s) .....	206
Audio Steering Wheel Controls .....	245
Care of Your Cassette Tape Player .....	247
Care of Your CD and DVD Player .....	249
Care of Your CDs and DVDs .....	249
CD Changer .....	241
Chime Level Adjustment .....	250
Fixed Mast Antenna .....	249
Navigation/Radio System, see	
Navigation Manual .....	225
Radio with Cassette and CD .....	208
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) .....	239
Setting the Time .....	208
Theft-Deterrent Feature .....	245
Understanding Radio Reception .....	246
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System .....	250
Automatic Headlamp System .....	154
Automatic Transmission	
Fluid .....	343
Operation .....	105

## B

Battery .....	365
Run-Down Protection .....	158
Battery Warning Light .....	174
Before Leaving on a Long Trip .....	286
Brake	
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) .....	257
Emergencies .....	259
Parking .....	109
System Warning Light .....	176
Brakes .....	362
Braking .....	256
Braking in Emergencies .....	259
Break-In, New Vehicle .....	99
Bulb Replacement .....	376
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)	
and Cargo Lamp .....	379
Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and	
Daytime Running Lamps .....	377
Halogen Bulbs .....	376
Headlamps .....	376
License Plate Lamps .....	382
Replacement Bulbs .....	382
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and	
Back-up Lamps .....	380
Buying New Tires .....	396

## C

Calibration .....	115	Child Restraints (cont.)	
California Fuel .....	327	Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children .....	51
California Proposition 65 Warning .....	325	Older Children .....	38
Canadian Owners .....	3	Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position .....	58
Capacities and Specifications .....	444	Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position .....	60
Carbon Monoxide .....	92, 113, 290, 304	Where to Put the Restraint .....	50
Care of		Chime Level Adjustment .....	250
Safety Belts .....	426	Cigarette Lighter .....	159
Your Cassette Tape Player .....	247	Cleaning	
Your CD and DVD Player .....	249	Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels .....	430
Your CDs and DVDs .....	249	Exterior Lamps/Lenses .....	428
Cargo Lamp .....	158	Fabric/Carpet .....	424
CD Changer .....	241	Finish Care .....	428
Center Console Storage Area .....	136	Inside of Your Vehicle .....	423
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) and Cargo Lamp .....	379	Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces .....	426
Chains, Tire .....	402	Leather .....	425
Check		Tires .....	431
Engine Light .....	180	Underbody Maintenance .....	432
Checking Things Under the Hood .....	332	Washing Your Vehicle .....	427
Chemical Paint Spotting .....	432	Weatherstrips .....	427
Child Restraints		Windshield and Wiper Blades .....	429
Child Restraint Systems .....	45	Wood Panels .....	426
Infants and Young Children .....	41		

Climate Control System	
Dual Automatic .....	160
Outlet Adjustment .....	167
Collision Damage Repair .....	481
Comfort Guides, Rear Safety Belt .....	35
Compass .....	115
Content Theft-Deterrent .....	96
Control of a Vehicle .....	256
Coolant	
Engine Temperature Gage .....	178
Heater, Engine .....	103
Surge Tank Pressure Cap .....	350
Cooling System .....	354
Cruise Control .....	149
Cruise Control Light .....	184
Cupholder(s) .....	136
Customer Assistance Information	
Courtesy Transportation .....	477
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users .....	472
Customer Assistance Offices .....	472
Customer Satisfaction Procedure .....	468
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program .....	473
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors .....	486
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government .....	486

Customer Assistance Information (cont.)	
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government .....	486
Roadside Assistance Program .....	474
Service Publications Ordering Information .....	487

## D

Daytime Running Lamps .....	153
Defensive Driving .....	252
Delayed Locking .....	92
Doing Your Own Service Work .....	325
Dome Lamp Override .....	157
Dome Lamps .....	156
Door	
Delayed Locking .....	92
Locks .....	90
Power Door Locks .....	91
Programmable Automatic Door Locks .....	92
Driver	
Position, Safety Belt .....	22
Driver Information Center (DIC) .....	186
DIC Operation and Displays .....	186
DIC Vehicle Customization .....	199
DIC Warnings and Messages .....	190

Driving	
At Night .....	279
City .....	284
Defensive .....	252
Drunken .....	253
Freeway .....	285
Hill and Mountain Roads .....	288
In Rain and on Wet Roads .....	280
Off-Road .....	265
Recovery Hooks .....	295
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out .....	294
Winter .....	290
Dual Automatic Climate Control System .....	160
DVD	
Rear Seat Entertainment System .....	225

## E

Electrical System	
Add-On Equipment .....	435
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	438
Fuses and Circuit Breakers .....	436
Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	436

Electrical System (cont.)	
Power Windows and Other Power	
Options .....	435
Underhood Fuse Block .....	439
Windshield Wiper Fuses .....	435
Engine	
Air Cleaner/Filter .....	341
Battery .....	365
Check and Service Engine Soon Light .....	180
Coolant .....	347
Coolant Heater .....	103
Coolant Temperature Gage .....	178
Drive Belt Routing .....	463
Engine Compartment Overview .....	334
Exhaust .....	113
Fan Noise .....	359
Oil .....	336
Oil Life System .....	339
Overheated Protection Operating Mode .....	353
Overheating .....	350
Starting .....	102
Entry Lighting .....	157
Event Data Recorders (EDR) .....	480
Exit Lighting .....	157
Extender, Safety Belt .....	37

## F

Filter	
Engine Air Cleaner .....	341
Finish Damage .....	431
Fixed Mast Antenna .....	249
Flashers, Hazard Warning .....	144
Flash-to-Pass .....	147
Flat Tire .....	403
Flat Tire, Changing .....	404
Flat Tire, Storing .....	418
Fluid	
Automatic Transmission .....	343
Power Steering .....	360
Windshield Washer .....	361
Fog Lamps .....	155
Front Axle .....	374
Front Reading Lamps .....	157
Fuel .....	326
Additives .....	327
California Fuel .....	327
Filling a Portable Fuel Container .....	331
Filling Your Tank .....	329
Fuels in Foreign Countries .....	328
Gage .....	185
Gasoline Octane .....	326

Fuel (cont.)	
Gasoline Specifications .....	326
Low Warning Light .....	185
Fuses	
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	438
Fuses and Circuit Breakers .....	436
Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	436
Underhood Fuse Block .....	439
Windshield Wiper .....	435

## G

Gage	
Engine Coolant Temperature .....	178
Fuel .....	185
Oil Pressure .....	183
Speedometer .....	170
Tachometer .....	170
Transmission Temperature .....	178
Voltmeter Gage .....	175
Garage Door Opener .....	124, 125
Gasoline	
Octane .....	326
Specifications .....	326
Glove Box .....	136
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program .....	473

## H

Hazard Warning Flashers .....	144
Head Restraints .....	14
Headlamps .....	152, 376
Automatic Headlamp System .....	154
Bulb Replacement .....	376
Daytime Running Lamps .....	153
Flash-to-Pass .....	147
Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime Running Lamps .....	377
Halogen Bulbs .....	376
High/Low Beam Changer .....	147
On Reminder .....	153
Heated Seats .....	9
Heater .....	160
Highbeam On Light .....	184
Highway Hypnosis .....	287
Hill and Mountain Roads .....	288
Hood	
Checking Things Under .....	332
Release .....	333
Horn .....	144
How to Use This Manual .....	4
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly .....	22

## I

Ignition Positions .....	100
Infants and Young Children, Restraints .....	41
Inflation - Tire Pressure .....	393
Instrument Panel	
Overview .....	142
Instrument Panel (I/P)	
Brightness .....	156
Cluster .....	169

## J

Jump Starting .....	366
---------------------	-----

## K

Keyless Entry System .....	86
Keys .....	85

## L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall .....	385
Lamps	
Battery Run-Down Protection .....	158
Cargo .....	158
Dome .....	156

Lamps (cont.)	
Dome Lamp Override .....	157
Fog .....	155
Front Reading .....	157
Puddle .....	155
LATCH System	
Child Restraints .....	51
License Plate Lamps .....	382
Light	
Airbag Readiness .....	171
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning .....	177
Battery Warning .....	174
Brake System Warning .....	176
Cruise Control .....	184
Highbeam On .....	184
Low Fuel Warning .....	185
Malfunction Indicator .....	180
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator .....	172
Safety Belt Reminder .....	171
Security .....	183
Tow/Haul Mode .....	184
Lighting	
Entry .....	157
Exit .....	157
Loading Your Vehicle .....	296

Locks	
Delayed Locking .....	92
Door .....	90
Power Door .....	91
Programmable Automatic Door Locks .....	92
Loss of Control .....	264
Low Fuel Warning Light .....	185
Lumbar	
Power Controls .....	9

## M

Maintenance Schedule	
Additional Required Services .....	452
At Each Fuel Fill .....	456
At Least Once a Month .....	457
At Least Once a Year .....	457
Introduction .....	446
Maintenance Footnotes .....	453
Maintenance Record .....	464
Maintenance Requirements .....	446
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts ..	462
Owner Checks and Services .....	456
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants .....	460



Maintenance Schedule (cont.)	
Scheduled Maintenance .....	449
Using .....	447
Your Vehicle and the Environment .....	447
Malfunction Indicator Light .....	180
Memory Seat and Mirrors .....	10
Message	
DIC Warnings and Messages .....	190
Mirrors	
Automatic Dimming Rearview with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display .....	115
Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror .....	120
Outside Convex Mirror .....	121
Outside Curb View Assist Mirrors .....	120
Outside Heated Mirrors .....	121
Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors .....	119
Outside Power Mirrors .....	118
MyGMLink.com .....	471

## N

Navigation/Radio System, see Navigation Manual .....	225
New Vehicle Break-In .....	99
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts .....	462

## O

Odometer .....	170
Odometer, Trip .....	170
Off-Road Driving .....	265
Off-Road Recovery .....	261
Oil	
Engine .....	336
Pressure Gage .....	183
Oil, Engine Oil Life System .....	339
Older Children, Restraints .....	38
Online Owner Center .....	471
OnStar® System, see OnStar® Manual .....	122
Other Warning Devices .....	144
Outlet Adjustment .....	167
Outlet(s), Accessory Power .....	158
Outside	
Automatic Dimming Mirror .....	120
Convex Mirror .....	121
Curb View Assist Mirrors .....	120
Heated Mirrors .....	121
Power Foldaway Mirrors .....	119
Power Mirrors .....	118
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode .....	353
Owner Checks and Services .....	456
Owners, Canadian .....	3

## P

Paint, Damage .....	431
Park (P)	
Shifting Into .....	110
Shifting Out of .....	112
Parking	
Brake .....	109
Over Things That Burn .....	112
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator .....	172
Passenger Sensing System .....	73
Passing .....	262
Passlock® .....	98
Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab .....	302
Power	
Accessory Outlet(s) .....	158
Door Locks .....	91
Electrical System .....	435
Lumbar Controls .....	9
Reclining Seatbacks .....	12
Retained Accessory (RAP) .....	101
Seat .....	8
Steering Fluid .....	360
Windows .....	95
Programmable Automatic Door Locks .....	92
Puddle Lamps .....	155

## Q

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts ...	21
--	----

## R

Radios .....	206
Care of Your Cassette Tape Player .....	247
Care of Your CD and DVD Player .....	249
Care of Your CDs and DVDs .....	249
CD Changer .....	241
Navigation/Radio System, see	
Navigation Manual .....	225
Radio with Cassette and CD .....	208
Rear Seat Audio .....	239
Setting the Time .....	208
Theft-Deterrent .....	245
Understanding Reception .....	246
Rear Axle .....	373
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides .....	35
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) .....	239
Rear Seat Entertainment System .....	225
Rear Seat Operation .....	14
Rear Seat Passengers, Safety Belts .....	32
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming with	
OnStar®, Compass and Temperature	
Display .....	115

Reclining Seatbacks, Power .....	12
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants .....	460
Recovery Hooks .....	295
Recreational Vehicle Towing .....	303
Remote Keyless Entry System .....	86
Remote Keyless Entry System, Operation .....	87
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire .....	408
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools .....	405
Replacement Bulbs .....	382
Reporting Safety Defects	
Canadian Government .....	486
General Motors .....	486
United States Government .....	486
Restraint System Check	
Checking the Restraint Systems .....	80
Replacing Restraint System Parts	
After a Crash .....	81
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) .....	101
Right Front Passenger Position, Safety Belts .....	32
Roadside	
Assistance Program .....	474
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out .....	294
Routing, Engine Drive Belt .....	463
Running the Engine While Parked .....	114

## S

Safety Belt	
Reminder Light .....	171
Safety Belts	
Care of .....	426
Driver Position .....	22
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly .....	22
Questions and Answers About Safety Belts .....	21
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides .....	35
Rear Seat Passengers .....	32
Right Front Passenger Position .....	32
Safety Belt Extender .....	37
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy .....	31
Safety Belts Are for Everyone .....	16
Safety Warnings and Symbols .....	4
Scheduled Maintenance .....	449
Seats	
Head Restraints .....	14
Heated Seats .....	9
Memory, Mirrors .....	10
Power Lumbar .....	9
Power Reclining Seatbacks .....	12
Power Seats .....	8
Rear Seat Operation .....	14
Secondary Latch System .....	415

Securing a Child Restraint	
Rear Seat Position .....	58
Right Front Seat Position .....	60
Security Light .....	183
Service .....	324
Accessories and Modifications .....	324
Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle .....	326
California Proposition 65 Warning .....	325
Doing Your Own Work .....	325
Engine Soon Light .....	180
Publications Ordering Information .....	487
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle .....	78
Setting the Time .....	208
Sheet Metal Damage .....	431
Shifting Into Park (P) .....	110
Shifting Out of Park (P) .....	112
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change .....	146
Sliding Rear Windows .....	96
Spare Tire .....	422
Installing .....	408
Removing .....	405
Storing .....	418
Specifications, Capacities .....	444
Speedometer .....	170

Starting Your Engine .....	102
Steering .....	259
Steering Wheel Controls, Audio .....	245
Steering Wheel, Tilt Wheel .....	144
Storage Areas	
Center Console Storage Area .....	136
Cupholder(s) .....	136
Glove Box .....	136
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow .....	294
Sun Visors .....	96
Sunroof .....	138

## T

Tachometer .....	170
Tailgate .....	92
Taillamps	
Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps .....	380
Theft-Deterrent, Radio .....	245
Theft-Deterrent Systems .....	96
Content Theft-Deterrent .....	96
Passlock® .....	98
Tilt Wheel .....	144



## V

Vehicle	
Control .....	256
Damage Warnings .....	5
Loading .....	296
Symbols .....	5
Vehicle Customization, DIC .....	199
Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data	
Recorders .....	480
Vehicle Identification	
Number (VIN) .....	434
Service Parts Identification Label .....	434
Ventilation Adjustment .....	167
Visors .....	96
Voltmeter Gage .....	175

## W

Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators .....	168
Warnings	
DIC Warnings and Messages .....	190
Hazard Warning Flashers .....	144
Other Warning Devices .....	144
Safety and Symbols .....	4
Vehicle Damage .....	5

Wheels	
Alignment and Tire Balance .....	400
Different Size .....	398
Replacement .....	401
Where to Put the Restraint .....	50
Windows .....	94
Power .....	95
Sliding Rear .....	96
Windshield	
Washer .....	148
Washer Fluid .....	361
Wiper Blade Replacement .....	383
Wiper Blades, Cleaning .....	429
Wiper Fuses .....	435
Wipers .....	147
Winter Driving .....	290

## X

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System .....	250
--	-----

## Y

Your Vehicle and the Environment .....	447
--	-----